

ISO 20022

## Target2-Securities - Intra-balance Movement - Maintenance 2023 - 2024

# Message Definition Report - Part 2

Approved by the Securities and the Payments SEGs under the  
leadership of the Securities SEG on 15 February 2024

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Target2-Securities - Intra-balance Movement - Maintenance 2023 - 2024.

March 2024

# Table of Contents

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>Message Set Overview</b>   | <b>5</b>   |
| 1.1      | List of MessageDefinitions  | 5          |
| <b>2</b> | <b>camt.066.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementInstructionV02</b>                     | <b>10</b>  |
| 2.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality   | 10         |
| 2.2      | Structure   | 12         |
| 2.3      | Constraints   | 13         |
| 2.4      | Message Building Blocks   | 15         |
| <b>3</b> | <b>camt.067.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementStatusAdviceV02</b>                    | <b>31</b>  |
| 3.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality   | 31         |
| 3.2      | Structure   | 33         |
| 3.3      | Constraints   | 34         |
| 3.4      | Message Building Blocks   | 35         |
| <b>4</b> | <b>camt.068.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementConfirmationV02</b>                    | <b>50</b>  |
| 4.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality   | 50         |
| 4.2      | Structure   | 51         |
| 4.3      | Constraints   | 52         |
| 4.4      | Message Building Blocks   | 53         |
| <b>5</b> | <b>camt.072.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestV02</b>             | <b>66</b>  |
| 5.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality   | 66         |
| 5.2      | Structure   | 68         |
| 5.3      | Constraints   | 70         |
| 5.4      | Message Building Blocks   | 71         |
| <b>6</b> | <b>camt.073.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestStatusAdviceV02</b> | <b>90</b>  |
| 6.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality   | 90         |
| 6.2      | Structure   | 92         |
| 6.3      | Constraints   | 94         |
| 6.4      | Message Building Blocks   | 95         |
| <b>7</b> | <b>camt.074.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestV02</b>             | <b>115</b> |
| 7.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality   | 115        |
| 7.2      | Structure   | 117        |
| 7.3      | Constraints   | 118        |
| 7.4      | Message Building Blocks   | 119        |
| <b>8</b> | <b>camt.075.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestStatusAdviceV02</b> | <b>132</b> |
| 8.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality   | 132        |
| 8.2      | Structure   | 134        |
| 8.3      | Constraints   | 135        |
| 8.4      | Message Building Blocks   | 136        |

|           |  |     |
|-----------|--|-----|
| <b>9</b>  | <b>camt.078.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementQueryV02</b>              | 150 |
| 9.1       | MessageDefinition Functionality                                  | 150 |
| 9.2       | Structure  | 151 |
| 9.3       | Constraints  | 154 |
| 9.4       | Message Building Blocks  | 155 |
| <b>10</b> | <b>camt.079.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementQueryResponseV02</b>      | 190 |
| 10.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality                                  | 190 |
| 10.2      | Structure  | 191 |
| 10.3      | Constraints  | 194 |
| 10.4      | Message Building Blocks  | 196 |
| <b>11</b> | <b>camt.080.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementModificationQueryV02</b>  | 232 |
| 11.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality                                  | 232 |
| 11.2      | Structure  | 233 |
| 11.3      | Constraints  | 234 |
| 11.4      | Message Building Blocks  | 234 |
| <b>12</b> | <b>camt.081.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementModificationReportV02</b> | 245 |
| 12.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality                                  | 245 |
| 12.2      | Structure  | 246 |
| 12.3      | Constraints  | 249 |
| 12.4      | Message Building Blocks  | 251 |
| <b>13</b> | <b>camt.082.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementCancellationQueryV02</b>  | 286 |
| 13.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality                                  | 286 |
| 13.2      | Structure  | 287 |
| 13.3      | Constraints  | 288 |
| 13.4      | Message Building Blocks  | 288 |
| <b>14</b> | <b>camt.083.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementCancellationReportV02</b> | 300 |
| 14.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality                                  | 300 |
| 14.2      | Structure  | 301 |
| 14.3      | Constraints  | 303 |
| 14.4      | Message Building Blocks  | 305 |
| <b>15</b> | <b>camt.084.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementPostingReportV02</b>      | 331 |
| 15.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality                                  | 331 |
| 15.2      | Structure  | 332 |
| 15.3      | Constraints  | 334 |
| 15.4      | Message Building Blocks  | 336 |
| <b>16</b> | <b>camt.085.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementPendingReportV02</b>      | 358 |
| 16.1      | MessageDefinition Functionality                                  | 358 |
| 16.2      | Structure  | 359 |
| 16.3      | Constraints  | 361 |
| 16.4      | Message Building Blocks  | 363 |

17

Message Items Types

387

17.1

MessageComponents

387

17.2

Message Datatypes

473

# 1 Message Set Overview

## Introduction

This document describes the Target2-Securities - Intra-balance Movement message set. It includes the new version of the MessageDefinitions that have been added as part of the maintenance cycle 2023-2024 (See MCR #234) and approved by the Securities and the Payments Standards Evaluation Groups under the leadership of the Securities SEG on 15 February 2024.

## 1.1 List of MessageDefinitions

The following table lists all MessageDefinitions described in this book.

| MessageDefinition                                      | Definition   |
|--|--|
| camt.066.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementInstructionV02  | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementInstruction message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to instruct the movement of an amount of money within its holdings from one sub-balance to another.</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>The message may be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li><li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li><li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").</li></ul>            |
| camt.067.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementStatusAdviceV02 | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementStatusAdvice message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to advise the status of an intra-balance movement instruction previously sent by the account owner/requestor.</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>The message may be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li><li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li><li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").</li></ul> |
| camt.068.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementConfirmationV02 | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementConfirmation message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to confirm the movement of an amount of money within its holdings from one sub-balance to another.</p> <p>Usage:</p>  |

| MessageDefinition   | Definition   |
|---|--|
|   | <p>The message may be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").</li> </ul>  |
| camt.072.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestV02             | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequest message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to request the modification of a processing indicator on a previously sent IntraBalanceMovementInstruction message.</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>The message may be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").</li> </ul>                |
| camt.073.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestStatusAdviceV02 | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestStatusAdvice message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to advise the status of an intra-balance movement modification request previously sent by the account owner/requestor.</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>The message may be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").</li> </ul> |
| camt.074.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestV02             | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequest message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to request the cancellation of a previously sent IntraBalanceMovementInstruction message.</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>The message may be used to:</p>   |

| MessageDefinition   | Definition  |
|---|---|
|   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").</li> </ul>  |
| camt.075.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestStatusAdviceV02 | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestStatusAdvice message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to advise the status of an intra-balance movement cancellation request previously sent by the account owner/requestor.</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>The message may be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").</li> </ul>  |
| camt.078.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementQueryV02                           | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementQuery message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to query intra-balance movement instructions, along with their current status, based on a set of search criteria.</p> <p>The message may also be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").</li> </ul> |
| camt.079.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementQueryResponseV02                   | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementQueryResponse message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to provide all intra-balance movement instructions satisfying the selection criteria, as defined within the query, returning current attributes and latest status.</p> <p>The message may also be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> </ul>   |

| MessageDefinition  | Definition  |
|--|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").</li> </ul>   |
| camt.080.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementModificationQueryV02  | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementModificationQuery message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to query for the status of intra-balance movement modification instruction(s) based on a set of search criteria or business attributes.</p> <p>The message may also be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").</li> </ul> |
| camt.081.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementModificationReportV02 | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementModificationReport message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to provide full details or current status values of the intra-balance movement modification request(s), as defined within the query.</p> <p>The message may also be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").</li> </ul>   |
| camt.082.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementCancellationQueryV02  | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationQuery message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to query for the status of intra-balance movement cancellation instruction(s) based on a set of search criteria or business attributes.</p> <p>The message may also be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").</li> </ul> |



| MessageDefinition  | Definition  |
|--|---|
| camt.083.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementCancellationReportV02 | <p>The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationReport message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to provide full details or current status values of the intra-balance movement cancellation request(s), as defined within the query.</p> <p>The message may also be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").</li> </ul>   |
| camt.084.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementPostingReportV02      | <p>This IntraBalanceMovementPostingReport message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to report the intra-balance movement instructions, previously sent by the account owner, that have a settled status.</p> <p>The message may also be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").</li> </ul> |
| camt.085.001.02<br>IntraBalanceMovementPendingReportV02      | <p>This IntraBalanceMovementPendingReport message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/request to report the intra-balance movement instructions, previously sent by the account owner, that have a pending status.</p> <p>The message may also be used to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")</li> <li>- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")</li> <li>- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").</li> </ul>   |

## 2 **camt.066.001.02** **IntraBalanceMovementInstructionV02**

### 2.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The IntraBalanceMovementInstruction message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to instruct the movement of an amount of money within its holdings from one sub-balance to another.

Usage:

The message may be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementInstructionV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 9 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

B. CorporateActionEventIdentification

Identification assigned by the account servicer to unambiguously identify a corporate action event.

C. NumberCounts

Count of the number of transactions linked.

D. Linkages

Link to another transaction that must be processed after, before or at the same time.

E. CashAccount

Account to or from which an entry is made.

F. CashAccountOwner

Party that legally owns the cash account.

G. CashAccountServicer

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

H. IntraBalance

Intra-balance movement transaction details.

I. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 2.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntInstr>                         | [1..1] |         |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>  | [0..1] |         |             | 15   |
|     | TransactionIdentification <TxId>                                     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 15   |
|     | DocumentIdentification <DocId>                                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 15   |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 16   |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>   | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 16   |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 16   |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 16   |
|     | CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 17   |
|     | NumberCounts <NbCounts>  | [0..1] | ±       | C10         | 17   |
|     | Linkages <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |         |             | 17   |
|     | ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±       | C17         | 18   |
|     | MessageNumber <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±       | C15         | 18   |
|     | Reference <Ref>  | [1..1] |         |             | 19   |
| {Or | SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification<br><SciesSttlmTxId>    | [1..1] | Text    |             | 19   |
| Or  | IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>                | [1..1] | Text    |             | 20   |
| Or  | IntraBalanceMovementIdentification <IntraBalMvmntId>                 | [1..1] | Text    |             | 20   |
| Or  | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 20   |
| Or  | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification<br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 20   |
| Or  | PoolIdentification <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 20   |
| Or} | OtherTransactionIdentification <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text    |             | 20   |
|     | ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 20   |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>  | [1..1] | ±       | C14,<br>C13 | 21   |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 21   |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 22   |
|     | IntraBalance <IntraBal>  | [1..1] |         | C3, C5      | 22   |
|     | SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 24   |
|     | SettlementDate <SttlmDt>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 24   |
|     | BalanceFrom <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 24   |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                              | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 24   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 25   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 25   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                              | [0..*] |         |             | 25   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 25   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 27   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 27   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 27   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 27   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                              | [0..*] |         |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 30   |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                             | [0..*] | ±       | C16         | 30   |

## 2.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

**C4 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

**C6 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C7 BlockTradeGuideline**

In a block trade instruction, the total number of children must be provided using TotalOfLinkedInstructions.

The CurrentInstructionNumber of the parent must be 000. The children must have an incremental CurrentInstructionNumber from 001 to 999.

For more details, see the relevant market practice document on [www.smpg.info](http://www.smpg.info).

**C8 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C9 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C10 CurrentInstructionNumberRule**

If the Sender wants to indicate that this instruction is linked to one or more settlement instruction, then the CurrentInstructionNumber must be specified.

**C11 CurrentInstructionNumberRule**

If the Sender wants to indicate that this instruction is linked to one or more settlement instruction, then the CurrentInstructionNumber must be specified.

**C12 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

#### **C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

#### **C15 ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### **C16 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### **C17 WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

## **2.4 Message Building Blocks**

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### **2.4.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **TransactionAndDocumentIdentification6** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 15   |
|    | <b>DocumentIdentification</b> <DocId>   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 15   |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 16   |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate</b> <CpyDplct>         | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 16   |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 16   |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient</b> <MsgRcpt>       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 16   |

#### **2.4.1.1 TransactionIdentification <TxId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the instructing party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **2.4.1.2 DocumentIdentification <DocId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 2.4.1.3 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the transaction was created by the instructing party in its business application.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

### 2.4.1.4 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

### 2.4.1.5 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

### 2.4.1.6 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]



*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification136"](#) on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification </d>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 2.4.2 CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by the account servicer to unambiguously identify a corporate action event.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 497

## 2.4.3 NumberCounts <NbCounts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Count of the number of transactions linked.

*Impacted by:* [C10 "CurrentInstructionNumberRule"](#)

**NumberCounts <NbCounts>** contains one of the following elements (see ["NumberCount1Choice"](#) on page 416 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                    | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | CurrentInstructionNumber <CurlInstrNb>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 416  |
| Or} | TotalNumber <TtlNb>                        | [1..1] |      | C11, C7     | 417  |
|     | CurrentInstructionNumber <CurlInstrNb>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 417  |
|     | TotalOfLinkedInstructions <TtlOfLkdInstrs> | [1..1] | Text |             | 417  |

### Constraints

- **CurrentInstructionNumberRule**

If the Sender wants to indicate that this instruction is linked to one or more settlement instruction, then the CurrentInstructionNumber must be specified.

## 2.4.4 Linkages <Lnkgs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Link to another transaction that must be processed after, before or at the same time.

**Linkages <Lnkgs>** contains the following **Linkages57** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>  | [0..1] | ±    | C17         | 18   |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>   | [0..1] | ±    | C15         | 18   |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>   | [1..1] |      |             | 19   |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 19   |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                           | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>  | [0..1] | ±    |             | 20   |

#### 2.4.4.1 ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* When the transaction is to be executed relative to a linked transaction.

*Impacted by:* C17 "WithLinkageRule"

**ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>** contains one of the following elements (see "ProcessingPosition7Choice" on page 412 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 413  |

#### Constraints

- **WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

#### 2.4.4.2 MessageNumber <MsgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Message type number/message identifier of the message referenced in the linkage sequence.

*Impacted by:* C15 "ShortLongNumberRule"

**MessageNumber <MsgNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "DocumentNumber5Choice" on page 399 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | ShortNumber <ShrtNb>        | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or  | LongNumber <LngNb>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or} | ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 399  |

#### Constraints

- **ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

### 2.4.4.3 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference to the linked transaction.

**Reference <Ref>** contains one of the following **References34Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 19   |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 20   |

#### 2.4.4.3.1 SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification <SctiesSttlmTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a securities settlement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **2.4.4.3.2 IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-position movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **2.4.4.3.3 IntraBalanceMovementIdentification <IntraBalMvmntId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-balance movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **2.4.4.3.4 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **2.4.4.3.5 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **2.4.4.3.6 PoolIdentification <PoolId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **2.4.4.3.7 OtherTransactionIdentification <OthrTxId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction that cannot be identified using a standard reference element present in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **2.4.4.4 ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party responsible for generating the reference.

**ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "PartyIdentification127Choice" on page 419 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 419  |
| Or} | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 420  |

## 2.4.5 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which an entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

### Constraints

- IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

## 2.4.6 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see  
"SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 2.4.7 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

## 2.4.8 IntraBalance <IntraBal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Intra-balance movement transaction details.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AdditionalDetailsRule", C5 "BalanceFromToRule"

**IntraBalance** <IntraBal> contains the following **IntraBalance5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 24   |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 24   |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 24   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 24   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 25   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 25   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 25   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 25   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 27   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 27   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 27   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 27   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                      | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrctgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 30   |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

- **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

### 2.4.8.1 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

### 2.4.8.2 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is to be moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

### 2.4.8.3 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 24   |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 25   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 25   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 25   |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 25   |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 26   |

#### 2.4.8.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]



*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 25   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 25   |

#### 2.4.8.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 2.4.8.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 2.4.8.3.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 25   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 26   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 26   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 26   |

#### 2.4.8.3.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 2.4.8.3.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 2.4.8.3.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>              | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>     | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 2.4.8.3.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

## 2.4.8.4 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 27   |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 27   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 27   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 28   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 29   |

### 2.4.8.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 27   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 27   |

#### 2.4.8.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 2.4.8.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 2.4.8.4.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 28   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 28   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 29   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 29   |

##### 2.4.8.4.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 2.4.8.4.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 2.4.8.4.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>                | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>       | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtdsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 2.4.8.4.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 2.4.8.5 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 2.4.8.6 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PriorityNumeric4Choice"](#) on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 2.4.8.7 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max350Text"](#) on page 497

### 2.4.9 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C16 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 3 **camt.067.001.02** **IntraBalanceMovementStatusAdviceV02**

### 3.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The IntraBalanceMovementStatusAdvice message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to advise the status of an intra-balance movement instruction previously sent by the account owner/requestor.

Usage:

The message may be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementStatusAdviceV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 9 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

B. TransactionIdentification

Unambiguous identification of a transaction as per the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

C. ProcessingStatus

Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

D. SettlementStatus

Provides the settlement status of a transaction.

E. CashAccount

Account to or from which an entry is made.

F. CashAccountOwner

Party that legally owns the cash account.

G. CashAccountServicer

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

H. UnderlyingIntraBalance

Intra-balance movement transaction details.

I. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.



## 3.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntStsAdv>                        | [1..1] |         |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>  | [0..1] |         |             | 35   |
|     | Identification <Id>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 36   |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 36   |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>   | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 36   |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 37   |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 37   |
|     | TransactionIdentification <TxId>                                     | [1..1] |         | C13         | 37   |
|     | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>                 | [1..1] | Text    |             | 38   |
|     | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 38   |
|     | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification<br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 38   |
|     | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrcrTxId>                        | [0..1] | Text    |             | 38   |
|     | ProcessingStatus <PrpgSts>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 38   |
|     | SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>  | [0..1] | ±       | C14         | 39   |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>  | [1..1] | ±       | C12,<br>C11 | 39   |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 40   |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 40   |
|     | UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>                             | [0..1] |         | C3, C6      | 41   |
|     | SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 43   |
|     | SettlementDate <SttlmDt>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 43   |
|     | BalanceFrom <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 43   |
|     | Type <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 43   |
| {Or | Code <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 44   |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 44   |
|     | QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |         |             | 44   |
|     | LotNumber <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 44   |
|     | LotAmount <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |
|     | LotQuantity <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |
|     | CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                              | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 46   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 46   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 46   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 46   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                              | [0..*] |         |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 49   |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                             | [0..*] | ±       | C15         | 49   |

## 3.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AdditionalDetailsRule

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

### C4 AdditionalReasonInformationRule

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

### C5 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C6 BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

**C7 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C8 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C9 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C10 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C11 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C12 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C13 NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule**

If no reference is available for the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification, for example, the transaction was sent by fax, then the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification must be NONREF.

**C14 PendingToFailingRule**

A pending transaction (PEND) becomes a failing transaction (PENF) on the settlement date instructed in the message, during the end of day reporting.

**C15 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 3.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 3.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 36   |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 36   |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 36   |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 37   |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 37   |

### 3.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 3.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

### 3.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

### 3.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

### 3.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 3.4.2 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a transaction as per the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Impacted by:* [C13 "NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule"](#)

**TransactionIdentification <TxId>** contains the following **TransactionIdentifications24** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 38   |
|    | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 38   |
|    | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text |             | 38   |
|    | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text |             | 38   |

## Constraints

- **NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule**

If no reference is available for the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification, for example, the transaction was sent by fax, then the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification must be NONREF.

### 3.4.2.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 3.4.2.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 3.4.2.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 3.4.2.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

## 3.4.3 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see "ProcessingStatus67Choice" on page 456 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 456  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or  | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or  | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |

### 3.4.4 SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the settlement status of a transaction.

*Impacted by:* C14 "PendingToFailingRule"

**SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>** contains one of the following elements (see "SettlementStatus16Choice" on page 459 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Pending <Pdg>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 460  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 460  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 460  |
| Or  | Failing <Fng>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 461  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 461  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 461  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>            | [1..1] | ±       |             | 461  |

#### Constraints

- **PendingToFailingRule**

A pending transaction (PEND) becomes a failing transaction (PENF) on the settlement date instructed in the message, during the end of day reporting.

### 3.4.5 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which an entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

## Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

## 3.4.6 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see ["SystemPartyIdentification8"](#) on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 3.4.7 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.



**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

### 3.4.8 UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Intra-balance movement transaction details.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AdditionalDetailsRule", C6 "BalanceFromToRule"

**UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>** contains the following **IntraBalance5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                    | [1..1] | ±       |             | 43   |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>                                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 43   |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 43   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 43   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 44   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 44   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 44   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 44   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 46   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 46   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 46   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 46   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrpgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 49   |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

- **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

### 3.4.8.1 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

### 3.4.8.2 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is to be moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

### 3.4.8.3 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 43   |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 44   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 44   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 44   |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 44   |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 45   |

#### 3.4.8.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 44   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 44   |

#### 3.4.8.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 3.4.8.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 3.4.8.3.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 44   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 45   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 45   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 45   |

#### 3.4.8.3.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 3.4.8.3.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 3.4.8.3.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 3.4.8.3.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

### 3.4.8.4 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 46   |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 46   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 46   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 47   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 48   |

#### 3.4.8.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 46   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 46   |

##### 3.4.8.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 3.4.8.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 3.4.8.4.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 47   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 47   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 48   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 48   |

##### 3.4.8.4.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 3.4.8.4.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 3.4.8.4.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>                | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>       | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtdsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 3.4.8.4.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 3.4.8.5 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 3.4.8.6 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.



**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PriorityNumeric4Choice"](#) on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

### 3.4.8.7 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max350Text"](#) on page 497

## 3.4.9 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C15 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 4 camt.068.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementConfirmationV02

## 4.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The IntraBalanceMovementConfirmation message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to confirm the movement of an amount of money within its holdings from one sub-balance to another.

Usage:

The message may be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementConfirmationV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 7 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

B. AdditionalParameters

Additional parameters to the transaction.

C. CashAccount

Account to or from which an entry is made.

D. CashAccountOwner

Party that legally owns the cash account.

E. CashAccountServicer

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

F. IntraBalance

Intra-balance movement transaction details.

G. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 4.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntConf> | [1..1] |         |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>                         | [0..1] |         |             | 53   |
|     | Identification <Id>                         | [1..1] | Text    |             | 53   |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 53   |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>                    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 54   |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 54   |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 54   |
|     | AdditionalParameters <AddtlParams>          | [0..1] | ±       |             | 55   |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>                       | [1..1] | ±       | C9, C8      | 55   |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>              | [0..1] | ±       |             | 56   |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 56   |
|     | IntraBalance <IntraBal>                     | [1..1] |         |             | 57   |
|     | SettledAmount <SttldAmt>                    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 58   |
|     | PreviouslySettledAmount <PrevsllySttldAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 59   |
|     | RemainingSettlementAmount <RmngSttldAmt>    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 59   |
|     | SettlementDate <SttldDt>                    | [1..1] | ±       |             | 59   |
|     | BalanceFrom <BalFr>                         | [1..1] |         |             | 59   |
|     | Type <Tp>                                   | [1..1] |         |             | 60   |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 60   |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                         | [1..1] | ±       |             | 60   |
|     | QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkwn>                | [0..*] |         |             | 61   |
|     | LotNumber <LotNb>                           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | LotAmount <LotAmt>                          | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | LotQuantity <LotQty>                        | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 62   |
|     | BalanceTo <BalTo>                           | [1..1] |         |             | 62   |
|     | Type <Tp>                                   | [1..1] |         |             | 62   |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 63   |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                         | [1..1] | ±       |             | 63   |
|     | QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkwn>                | [0..*] |         |             | 63   |

| Or | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                              | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±    |             | 63   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±    |             | 64   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±    |             | 64   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                            | [0..1] | ±    |             | 64   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                  | [0..1] | ±    |             | 65   |
|    | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text |             | 65   |
|    | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                             | [0..*] | ±    | C10         | 65   |

## 4.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C7 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

- C8 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**  
If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.
- C9 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**  
Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.
- C10 SupplementaryDataRule**  
This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 4.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 4.4.1 Identification <Id>

- Presence:* [0..1]
- Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.
- Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 53   |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 53   |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 54   |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 54   |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 54   |

#### 4.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

- Presence:* [1..1]
- Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.
- Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 4.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

- Presence:* [0..1]
- Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 4.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* ["CopyDuplicate1Code"](#) on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 4.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification136"](#) on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 4.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification136"](#) on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 4.4.2 AdditionalParameters <AddtlParams>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Additional parameters to the transaction.

**AdditionalParameters <AddtlParams>** contains the following elements (see ["AdditionalParameters16"](#) on page 410 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | PartialSettlement <PrtlSttlm>                                     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 411  |
|    | PreviousPartialConfirmationIdentification <PrvsPrtlConflId>       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | PoolIdentification <PoolId>                                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtId>                | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrcrTxId>                     | [0..1] | Text    |             | 412  |

## 4.4.3 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which an entry is made.

*Impacted by:* [C9 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C8 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see ["CashAccount40"](#) on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

## Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

## 4.4.4 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 4.4.5 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.



**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr.<br>No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|----------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |                | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6             | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |                | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |                | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |                | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |                | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |                | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |                | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |                | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |                | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |                | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |                | 404  |

#### 4.4.6 IntraBalance <IntraBal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Intra-balance movement transaction details.

**IntraBalance** <IntraBal> contains the following **IntraBalance6** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>                                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 58   |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 59   |
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttldAmt>                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 59   |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttldDt>                                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 59   |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 59   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 60   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 60   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 60   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 61   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 62   |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 62   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 62   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 63   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 63   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 63   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 63   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 64   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 64   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 64   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 65   |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 65   |

#### 4.4.6.1 SettledAmount <SttldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money effectively settled and which will be credited to/debited from the account owner's cash account. It may differ from the instructed settlement amount based on market tolerance level.

**SettledAmount <SttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 4.4.6.2 PreviouslySettledAmount <PrevslySttldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money previously settled.

**PreviouslySettledAmount <PrevslySttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 4.4.6.3 RemainingSettlementAmount <RmngSttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remaining to be settled.

**RemainingSettlementAmount <RmngSttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 4.4.6.4 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 4.4.6.5 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 60   |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 60   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 60   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdown&gt;</b>   | [0..*] |         |             | 61   |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 61   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 62   |

#### 4.4.6.5.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 60   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 60   |

##### 4.4.6.5.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 4.4.6.5.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 4.4.6.5.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 61   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 61   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 61   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 62   |

##### 4.4.6.5.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 4.4.6.5.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

##### 4.4.6.5.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 4.4.6.5.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 4.4.6.6 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3**  
elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 62   |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 63   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 63   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 63   |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 63   |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 64   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 64   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 64   |

##### 4.4.6.6.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 63   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 63   |

#### 4.4.6.6.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 4.4.6.6.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 4.4.6.6.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 63   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 64   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 64   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 64   |

#### 4.4.6.6.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 4.4.6.6.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 4.4.6.6.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 4.4.6.6.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |



#### 4.4.6.7 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 4.4.6.8 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* "[Max350Text](#)" on page 497

### 4.4.7 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C10 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 5 **camt.072.001.02** **IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestV** **02**

## 5.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequest message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to request the modification of a processing indicator on a previously sent IntraBalanceMovementInstruction message.

Usage:

The message may be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 7 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

B. CashAccount

Account to or from which an entry is made.

C. CashAccountOwner

Party that legally owns the cash account.

D. CashAccountServicer

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

E. RequestDetails

Details of the request providing the changes and references of the instruction for which the modification is requested.

F. UnderlyingIntraBalance

Original intra-balance movement transaction details.

G. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 5.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                               | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntModReq>                       | [1..1] |           |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>   | [0..1] |           |             | 71   |
|     | Identification <Id>   | [1..1] | Text      |             | 71   |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 72   |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>  | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 72   |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 72   |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 72   |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>   | [1..1] | ±         | C11,<br>C10 | 73   |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                                      | [0..1] | ±         |             | 73   |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>                                   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 74   |
|     | RequestDetails <ReqDtls>  | [1..*] |           | C12,<br>C13 | 74   |
|     | Reference <Ref>   | [1..1] |           |             | 76   |
|     | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxld>                | [0..1] | Text      |             | 76   |
|     | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxld>             | [0..1] | Text      |             | 76   |
|     | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification<br><MktInfstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 76   |
|     | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxld>                      | [0..1] | Text      |             | 76   |
|     | PoolIdentification <PoolId>   | [0..1] | Text      |             | 77   |
|     | Linkage <Lkg>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 77   |
|     | Priority <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 77   |
|     | OtherProcessing <OthrPrcg>  | [0..*] | ±         |             | 77   |
|     | PartialSettlementIndicator <PrtlSttlmInd>                           | [0..1] | Indicator |             | 77   |
|     | ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>  | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 78   |
|     | Linkages <Lnkgs>  | [0..*] |           |             | 78   |
|     | ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>  | [0..1] | ±         | C16         | 79   |
|     | MessageNumber <MsgNb>   | [0..1] | ±         | C14         | 79   |
|     | Reference <Ref>   | [1..1] |           |             | 79   |
| {Or | SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification<br><SctiesSttlmTxld>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 80   |
| Or  | IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>               | [1..1] | Text      |             | 80   |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b> <IntraBalMvmntId>                 | [1..1] | Text    |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 81   |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text    |             | 81   |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 81   |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlyglIntraBal>                            | [0..1] |         | C3, C5      | 81   |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 83   |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 83   |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 83   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 83   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 84   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 84   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |         |             | 84   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 84   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 86   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 86   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 86   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 86   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |         |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrccgAddtlDtls>         | [0..1] | Text    |             | 89   |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±       | C15         | 89   |

## 5.3 Constraints

### C1 **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

### C4 **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

### C6 **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C7 **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C8 **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C9 **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### C10 **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

#### **C11 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

#### **C12 ModificationRequestPresenceRule**

At least one modification request type element must be present.

#### **C13 OtherProcessingRule**

If OtherProcessing is used, then its usage must be pre-agreed between the sender and the receiver.

#### **C14 ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### **C15 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### **C16 WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

## **5.4 Message Building Blocks**

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### **5.4.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 71   |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 72   |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 72   |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 72   |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 72   |

#### **5.4.1.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 5.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 5.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 5.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.



**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 5.4.2 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which an entry is made.

*Impacted by:* [C11 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C10 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True

/Identification Must be present

Or /Proxy Must be present

## 5.4.3 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see  
"SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 5.4.4 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

## 5.4.5 RequestDetails <ReqDtls>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Details of the request providing the changes and references of the instruction for which the modification is requested.

*Impacted by:* C12 "ModificationRequestPresenceRule", C13 "OtherProcessingRule"

**RequestDetails <ReqDtls>** contains the following **RequestDetails22** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 76   |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text      |             | 76   |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text      |             | 76   |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 76   |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 76   |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 77   |
|     | <b>Linkage</b> <Lkg>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 77   |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 77   |
|     | <b>OtherProcessing</b> <OthrPrcg>   | [0..*] | ±         |             | 77   |
|     | <b>PartialSettlementIndicator</b> <PrtlSttlmInd>                            | [0..1] | Indicator |             | 77   |
|     | <b>ClearingChannel</b> <ClrChanl>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 78   |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |           |             | 78   |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±         | C16         | 79   |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±         | C14         | 79   |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 79   |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><ScetiesSttlmTxId>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text      |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text      |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text      |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 81   |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text      |             | 81   |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 81   |

#### Constraints

- **ModificationRequestPresenceRule**

At least one modification request type element must be present.

- **OtherProcessingRule**

If OtherProcessing is used, then its usage must be pre-agreed between the sender and the receiver.

#### 5.4.5.1 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* References of the transaction for which the intra-balance modification is requested.

**Reference <Ref>** contains the following **References14** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text |             | 76   |
|    | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 76   |
|    | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text |             | 76   |
|    | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text |             | 76   |
|    | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text |             | 77   |

##### 5.4.5.1.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 5.4.5.1.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 5.4.5.1.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 5.4.5.1.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.5.1.5 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.5.2 Linkage <Lkg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of linkage requested.

**Linkage <Lkg>** contains one of the following elements (see "LinkageType3Choice" on page 413 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 414  |

#### 5.4.5.3 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see "PriorityNumeric4Choice" on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 5.4.5.4 OtherProcessing <OthrPrcg>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies another type of processing change request.

**OtherProcessing <OthrPrcg>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 5.4.5.5 PartialSettlementIndicator <PrtlSttlmInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether partial settlement is allowed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

#### 5.4.5.6 ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing channel to be used to process the payment instruction.

*Datatype:* "ClearingChannel2Code" on page 477

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| RTGS     | RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem | Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.  |
| RTNS     | RealTimeNetSettlementSystem   | Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.    |
| MPNS     | MassPaymentNetSystem          | Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system. |
| BOOK     | BookTransfer                  | Payment through internal book transfer.                   |

#### 5.4.5.7 Linkages <Lnkgs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information regarding the linkage requested.

**Linkages <Lnkgs>** contains the following **Linkages57** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±    | C16         | 79   |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±    | C14         | 79   |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |      |             | 79   |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 81   |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 81   |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±    |             | 81   |

#### 5.4.5.7.1 ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* When the transaction is to be executed relative to a linked transaction.

*Impacted by:* C16 "WithLinkageRule"

**ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>** contains one of the following elements (see "ProcessingPosition7Choice" on page 412 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 413  |

##### Constraints

- **WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

#### 5.4.5.7.2 MessageNumber <MsgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Message type number/message identifier of the message referenced in the linkage sequence.

*Impacted by:* C14 "ShortLongNumberRule"

**MessageNumber <MsgNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "DocumentNumber5Choice" on page 399 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | ShortNumber <ShrtNb>        | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or  | LongNumber <LngNb>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or} | ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 399  |

##### Constraints

- **ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### 5.4.5.7.3 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference to the linked transaction.

**Reference <Ref>** contains one of the following **References34Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 80   |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 81   |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 81   |

#### 5.4.5.7.3.1 SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification <SctiesSttlmTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a securities settlement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.5.7.3.2 IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-position movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.5.7.3.3 IntraBalanceMovementIdentification <IntraBalMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-balance movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.5.7.3.4 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.5.7.3.5 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497



#### 5.4.5.7.3.6 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.5.7.3.7 OtherTransactionIdentification <OthrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction that cannot be identified using a standard reference element present in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 5.4.5.7.4 ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party responsible for generating the reference.

**ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "PartyIdentification127Choice" on page 419 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 419  |
| Or} | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 420  |

### 5.4.6 UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original intra-balance movement transaction details.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AdditionalDetailsRule", C5 "BalanceFromToRule"

**UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>** contains the following **IntraBalance5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 83   |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 83   |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 83   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 83   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 84   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 84   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 84   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 84   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 86   |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 86   |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 86   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 86   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                      | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrctgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 89   |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

- **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

#### 5.4.6.1 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 5.4.6.2 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is to be moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 5.4.6.3 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 83   |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 84   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 84   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdw&gt;</b>     | [0..*] |         |             | 84   |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 84   |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 85   |

##### 5.4.6.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 84   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 84   |

#### 5.4.6.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 5.4.6.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 5.4.6.3.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 84   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 85   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 85   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 85   |

#### 5.4.6.3.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 5.4.6.3.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 5.4.6.3.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 5.4.6.3.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 5.4.6.4 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 86   |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 86   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 86   |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 87   |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 88   |

##### 5.4.6.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 86   |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 86   |

##### 5.4.6.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 5.4.6.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 5.4.6.4.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 87   |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 87   |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 88   |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 88   |

##### 5.4.6.4.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 5.4.6.4.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 5.4.6.4.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 5.4.6.4.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 5.4.6.5 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 5.4.6.6 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.



**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PriorityNumeric4Choice"](#) on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 5.4.6.7 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max350Text"](#) on page 497

### 5.4.7 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C15 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 6 **camt.073.001.02** **IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestSt** **atusAdviceV02**

## 6.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestStatusAdvice message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to advise the status of an intra-balance movement modification request previously sent by the account owner/requestor.

Usage:

The message may be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementModificationRequestStatusAdviceV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 9 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

B. RequestReference

Reference of the original intra-balance movement modification request.

C. CashAccount

Account to or from which an entry is made.

D. CashAccountOwner

Party that legally owns the cash account.

E. CashAccountServicer

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

F. RequestDetails

Details of the request providing the changes and references of the instruction for which the modification is requested.

G. ProcessingStatus

Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

---

H. UnderlyingIntraBalance

Intra-balance movement transaction details.

I. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 6.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntModReqStsAdvc>                 | [1..1] |           |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>  | [0..1] |           |             | 95   |
|     | Identification <Id>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 96   |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 96   |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 96   |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 97   |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 97   |
|     | RequestReference <ReqRef>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 97   |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>  | [1..1] | ±         | C12,<br>C11 | 97   |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±         |             | 98   |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±         |             | 98   |
|     | RequestDetails <ReqDtls>   | [0..1] |           | C13,<br>C14 | 99   |
|     | Reference <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 101  |
|     | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxld>                 | [0..1] | Text      |             | 101  |
|     | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxld>              | [0..1] | Text      |             | 101  |
|     | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification<br><MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 101  |
|     | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxld>                       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 101  |
|     | PoolIdentification <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 102  |
|     | Linkage <Lkg>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 102  |
|     | Priority <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 102  |
|     | OtherProcessing <OthrPrcg>   | [0..*] | ±         |             | 102  |
|     | PartialSettlementIndicator <PrtlSttlmInd>                            | [0..1] | Indicator |             | 102  |
|     | ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 103  |
|     | Linkages <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |           |             | 103  |
|     | ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±         | C17         | 104  |
|     | MessageNumber <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±         | C15         | 104  |
|     | Reference <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 104  |
| {Or | SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification<br><SctiesSttlmTxld>   | [1..1] | Text      |             | 105  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b> <IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text    |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b> <IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text    |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b> <MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>                                       | [1..1] | Text    |             | 106  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                         | [1..1] | Text    |             | 106  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 106  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 106  |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                          | [0..1] |         | C3, C6      | 106  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 108  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 108  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 108  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 108  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 109  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 109  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                    | [0..*] |         |             | 109  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 109  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 111  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 111  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 111  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 111  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                    | [0..*] |         |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                        | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |

| Or | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                              | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text |             | 114  |
|    | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                             | [0..*] | ±    | C16         | 114  |

## 6.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AdditionalDetailsRule

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

### C4 AdditionalReasonInformationRule

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

### C5 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C6 BalanceFromToRule

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

### C7 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C8 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C9 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

---

**C10 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C11 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C12 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C13 ModificationRequestPresenceRule**

At least one modification request type element must be present.

**C14 OtherProcessingRule**

If OtherProcessing is used, then its usage must be pre-agreed between the sender and the receiver.

**C15 ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

**C16 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C17 WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

## 6.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 6.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 96   |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 96   |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 96   |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 97   |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 97   |

#### 6.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 6.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |



#### 6.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 6.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

### 6.4.2 RequestReference <ReqRef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference of the original intra-balance movement modification request.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

### 6.4.3 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which an entry is made.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

## Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

## 6.4.4 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see ["SystemPartyIdentification8"](#) on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 6.4.5 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr.<br>No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|----------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |                | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6             | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |                | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |                | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |                | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |                | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |                | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |                | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |                | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |                | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |                | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |                | 404  |

## 6.4.6 RequestDetails <ReqDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Details of the request providing the changes and references of the instruction for which the modification is requested.

*Impacted by:* C13 "ModificationRequestPresenceRule", C14 "OtherProcessingRule"

**RequestDetails <ReqDtls>** contains the following **RequestDetails22** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 101  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text      |             | 101  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text      |             | 101  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 101  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 101  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 102  |
|     | <b>Linkage</b> <Lkg>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 102  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 102  |
|     | <b>OtherProcessing</b> <OthrPrcg>   | [0..*] | ±         |             | 102  |
|     | <b>PartialSettlementIndicator</b> <PrtlSttlmInd>                            | [0..1] | Indicator |             | 102  |
|     | <b>ClearingChannel</b> <ClrChanl>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 103  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |           |             | 103  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±         | C17         | 104  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±         | C15         | 104  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 104  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><ScetiesSttlmTxId>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text      |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text      |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text      |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 106  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text      |             | 106  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 106  |

## Constraints

- **ModificationRequestPresenceRule**

At least one modification request type element must be present.

- **OtherProcessingRule**

If OtherProcessing is used, then its usage must be pre-agreed between the sender and the receiver.

### 6.4.6.1 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* References of the transaction for which the intra-balance modification is requested.

**Reference <Ref>** contains the following **References14** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text |             | 101  |
|    | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 101  |
|    | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text |             | 101  |
|    | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text |             | 101  |
|    | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text |             | 102  |

#### 6.4.6.1.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.1.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.1.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.1.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.1.5 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.2 Linkage <Lkg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of linkage requested.

**Linkage <Lkg>** contains one of the following elements (see "LinkageType3Choice" on page 413 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 414  |

#### 6.4.6.3 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see "PriorityNumeric4Choice" on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 6.4.6.4 OtherProcessing <OthrPrcg>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies another type of processing change request.

**OtherProcessing <OthrPrcg>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 6.4.6.5 PartialSettlementIndicator <PrtlSttlmInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether partial settlement is allowed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

#### 6.4.6.6 ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing channel to be used to process the payment instruction.

*Datatype:* "ClearingChannel2Code" on page 477

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| RTGS     | RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem | Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.  |
| RTNS     | RealTimeNetSettlementSystem   | Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.    |
| MPNS     | MassPaymentNetSystem          | Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system. |
| BOOK     | BookTransfer                  | Payment through internal book transfer.                   |

#### 6.4.6.7 Linkages <Lnkgs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information regarding the linkage requested.

**Linkages <Lnkgs>** contains the following **Linkages57** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±    | C17         | 104  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±    | C15         | 104  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |      |             | 104  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 106  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 106  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±    |             | 106  |

#### 6.4.6.7.1 ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* When the transaction is to be executed relative to a linked transaction.

*Impacted by:* C17 "WithLinkageRule"

**ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>** contains one of the following elements (see "ProcessingPosition7Choice" on page 412 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 413  |

##### Constraints

- **WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

#### 6.4.6.7.2 MessageNumber <MsgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Message type number/message identifier of the message referenced in the linkage sequence.

*Impacted by:* C15 "ShortLongNumberRule"

**MessageNumber <MsgNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "DocumentNumber5Choice" on page 399 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | ShortNumber <ShrtNb>        | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or  | LongNumber <LngNb>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or} | ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 399  |

##### Constraints

- **ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### 6.4.6.7.3 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference to the linked transaction.



**Reference <Ref>** contains one of the following **References34Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 105  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 106  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 106  |

#### 6.4.6.7.3.1 SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification <SctiesSttlmTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a securities settlement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.7.3.2 IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-position movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.7.3.3 IntraBalanceMovementIdentification <IntraBalMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-balance movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.7.3.4 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.7.3.5 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.7.3.6 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.7.3.7 OtherTransactionIdentification <OthrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction that cannot be identified using a standard reference element present in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 6.4.6.7.4 ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party responsible for generating the reference.

**ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "PartyIdentification127Choice" on page 419 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 419  |
| Or} | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 420  |

### 6.4.7 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see "ProcessingStatus71Choice" on page 450 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 450  |
| Or  | Pending <Pdg>                     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 450  |
| Or  | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 451  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 451  |
| Or  | Denied <Dnd>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 452  |
| Or  | Completed <Cmpltd>                | [1..1] | ±    | C5          | 452  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 452  |

### 6.4.8 UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Intra-balance movement transaction details.

Impacted by: C3 "AdditionalDetailsRule", C6 "BalanceFromToRule"

UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal> contains the following IntraBalance5 elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 108  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 108  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 108  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 108  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 109  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 109  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 109  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 109  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 111  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 111  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 111  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 111  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                      | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrccgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 114  |

#### Constraints

- AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

- BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

#### 6.4.8.1 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 6.4.8.2 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is to be moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 6.4.8.3 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 108  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 109  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 109  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 109  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 109  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 110  |

##### 6.4.8.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 109  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 109  |

#### 6.4.8.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 6.4.8.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 6.4.8.3.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 109  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 110  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 110  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 110  |

#### 6.4.8.3.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 6.4.8.3.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 6.4.8.3.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 6.4.8.3.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 6.4.8.4 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 111  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 111  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 111  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 112  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 113  |

##### 6.4.8.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 111  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 111  |

##### 6.4.8.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 6.4.8.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 6.4.8.4.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | LotNumber <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 112  |
|    | LotAmount <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 112  |
|    | LotQuantity <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 113  |
|    | CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 113  |

##### 6.4.8.4.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 6.4.8.4.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |



#### 6.4.8.4.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 6.4.8.4.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 6.4.8.5 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 6.4.8.6 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PriorityNumeric4Choice"](#) on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 6.4.8.7 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max350Text"](#) on page 497

### 6.4.9 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C16 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 7 **camt.074.001.02** **IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestV02**

## 7.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequest message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to request the cancellation of a previously sent IntraBalanceMovementInstruction message.

Usage:

The message may be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 7 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

B. TransactionIdentification

Unambiguous identification of a transaction as per the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

C. CashAccount

Account to or from which an entry is made.

D. CashAccountOwner

Party that legally owns the cash account.

E. CashAccountServicer

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

F. UnderlyingIntraBalance

Intra-balance movement transaction details.

G. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 7.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntCxlReq>                        | [1..1] |         |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>  | [0..1] |         |             | 119  |
|     | Identification <Id>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 120  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 120  |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>   | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 120  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 120  |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 121  |
|     | TransactionIdentification <TxId>                                     | [1..1] |         |             | 121  |
|     | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 121  |
|     | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 121  |
|     | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification<br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 121  |
|     | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 122  |
|     | PoolIdentification <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 122  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>  | [1..1] | ±       | C11,<br>C10 | 122  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 122  |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 123  |
|     | UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>                             | [0..1] |         | C3, C5      | 123  |
|     | SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 125  |
|     | SettlementDate <SttlmDt>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 125  |
|     | BalanceFrom <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 125  |
|     | Type <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 125  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 126  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 126  |
|     | QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |         |             | 126  |
|     | LotNumber <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 126  |
|     | LotAmount <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |
|     | LotQuantity <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |
|     | CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |
|     | BalanceTo <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 128  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                              | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 128  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 128  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 128  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                               | [0..*] |         |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 131  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                             | [0..*] | ±       | C12         | 131  |

## 7.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AdditionalDetailsRule

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

### C4 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 BalanceFromToRule

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

#### **C6 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### **C7 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### **C8 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **C9 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

#### **C10 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

#### **C11 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

#### **C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## **7.4 Message Building Blocks**

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### **7.4.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 120  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 120  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 120  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 120  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 121  |

#### 7.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 7.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 7.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 7.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |



### 7.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 7.4.2 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a transaction as per the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

**TransactionIdentification <TxId>** contains the following **References14** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text |             | 121  |
|    | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 121  |
|    | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text |             | 121  |
|    | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text |             | 122  |
|    | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text |             | 122  |

### 7.4.2.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

### 7.4.2.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

### 7.4.2.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 7.4.2.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 7.4.2.5 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 7.4.3 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which an entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C11 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C10 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

#### Constraints

- IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

### 7.4.4 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see  
"SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 7.4.5 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstAdr>                           | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstAdr>                           | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

## 7.4.6 UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Intra-balance movement transaction details.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AdditionalDetailsRule", C5 "BalanceFromToRule"

**UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>** contains the following **IntraBalance5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 125  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 125  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 125  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 125  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 126  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 126  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 126  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 126  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 128  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 128  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 128  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 128  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                      | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrccgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 131  |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

- **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

#### 7.4.6.1 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 7.4.6.2 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is to be moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 7.4.6.3 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 125  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 126  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 126  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 126  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 126  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 127  |

##### 7.4.6.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 126  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 126  |

#### 7.4.6.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 7.4.6.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 7.4.6.3.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 126  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 127  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 127  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 127  |

#### 7.4.6.3.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 7.4.6.3.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 7.4.6.3.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 7.4.6.3.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 7.4.6.4 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 128  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 128  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 128  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 129  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 130  |

##### 7.4.6.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 128  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 128  |

##### 7.4.6.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 7.4.6.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.



**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 7.4.6.4.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 129  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 129  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 130  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 130  |

##### 7.4.6.4.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 7.4.6.4.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 7.4.6.4.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 7.4.6.4.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 7.4.6.5 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 7.4.6.6 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PriorityNumeric4Choice"](#) on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 7.4.6.7 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max350Text"](#) on page 497

### 7.4.7 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 8 camt.075.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestS tatusAdviceV02

## 8.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestStatusAdvice message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to advise the status of an intra-balance movement cancellation request previously sent by the account owner/requestor.

### Usage:

The message may be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "CopyDuplicate").

### Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationRequestStatusAdviceV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 9 MessageBuildingBlocks:

#### A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

#### B. RequestReference

Reference of the original intra-balance movement cancellation request.

#### C. TransactionIdentification

Unambiguous identification of a transaction as per the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

#### D. ProcessingStatus

Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

#### E. CashAccount

Account to or from which an entry is made.

#### F. CashAccountOwner

Party that legally owns the cash account.

#### G. CashAccountServicer

---

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

H. UnderlyingIntraBalance

Intra-balance movement transaction details.

I. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 8.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                             | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntCxlReqStsAdv>               | [1..1] |         |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>   | [0..1] |         |             | 136  |
|     | Identification <Id>   | [1..1] | Text    |             | 137  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 137  |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>  | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 137  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                                      | [0..1] | ±       |             | 138  |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 138  |
|     | RequestReference <ReqRef>   | [1..1] | Text    |             | 138  |
|     | TransactionIdentification <TxId>                                  | [1..1] |         |             | 138  |
|     | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 139  |
|     | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 139  |
|     | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 139  |
|     | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxId>                    | [0..1] | Text    |             | 139  |
|     | PoolIdentification <PoolId>                                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 139  |
|     | ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 139  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>   | [1..1] | ±       | C12, C11    | 140  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 140  |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>                                 | [0..1] | ±       |             | 141  |
|     | UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>                          | [0..1] |         | C3, C6      | 141  |
|     | SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>                                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 143  |
|     | SettlementDate <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 143  |
|     | BalanceFrom <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 143  |
|     | Type <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 143  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 144  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 144  |
|     | QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>                                     | [0..*] |         |             | 144  |
|     | LotNumber <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 144  |
|     | LotAmount <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |
|     | LotQuantity <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                              | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 146  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 146  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 146  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 146  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                              | [0..*] |         |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 149  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                             | [0..*] | ±       | C13         | 149  |

## 8.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AdditionalDetailsRule

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

### C4 AdditionalReasonInformationRule

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

---

**C5 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C6 BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

**C7 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C8 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C9 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C10 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C11 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C12 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C13 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 8.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 8.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.



**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 137  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 137  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 137  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 138  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 138  |

#### 8.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 8.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 8.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 8.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 8.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

### 8.4.2 RequestReference <ReqRef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference of the original intra-balance movement cancellation request.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

### 8.4.3 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a transaction as per the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

**TransactionIdentification <TxId>** contains the following **References14** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text |             | 139  |
|    | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 139  |
|    | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text |             | 139  |
|    | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text |             | 139  |
|    | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text |             | 139  |

---

#### **8.4.3.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **8.4.3.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **8.4.3.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **8.4.3.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **8.4.3.5 PoolIdentification <PoolId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### **8.4.4 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrpgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ProcessingStatus69Choice" on page 452 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | PendingCancellation <PdgCxl>      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or  | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or  | Denied <Dnd>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or} | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 455  |

## 8.4.5 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which an entry is made.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

## 8.4.6 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see  
"SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 8.4.7 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

## 8.4.8 UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Intra-balance movement transaction details.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AdditionalDetailsRule", C6 "BalanceFromToRule"

**UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>** contains the following **IntraBalance5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 143  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 143  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 143  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 143  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 144  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 144  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 144  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 144  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 146  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 146  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 146  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 146  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                      | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrccgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 149  |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

- **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

#### 8.4.8.1 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 8.4.8.2 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is to be moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 8.4.8.3 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 143  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 144  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 144  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 144  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 144  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 145  |

##### 8.4.8.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 144  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 144  |

#### 8.4.8.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 8.4.8.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 8.4.8.3.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 144  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 145  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 145  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 145  |

#### 8.4.8.3.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.



**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 8.4.8.3.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 8.4.8.3.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 8.4.8.3.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 8.4.8.4 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 146  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 146  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 146  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 147  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 148  |

##### 8.4.8.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 146  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 146  |

##### 8.4.8.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 8.4.8.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 8.4.8.4.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 147  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 147  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 148  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 148  |

##### 8.4.8.4.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 8.4.8.4.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 8.4.8.4.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 8.4.8.4.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 8.4.8.5 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 8.4.8.6 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PriorityNumeric4Choice"](#) on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 8.4.8.7 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max350Text"](#) on page 497

#### 8.4.9 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C13 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

##### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 9 **camt.078.001.02** **IntraBalanceMovementQueryV02**

### 9.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The IntraBalanceMovementQuery message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to query intra-balance movement instructions, along with their current status, based on a set of search criteria.

The message may also be used to:

- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementQueryV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

#### A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

#### B. QueryDefinition

Defines the intra-balance movement instruction query criteria.

#### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 9.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                             | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntQry>                        | [1..1] |         |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>   | [0..1] |         |             | 155  |
|     | Identification <Id>   | [1..1] | Text    |             | 155  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 156  |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>  | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 156  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                                      | [0..1] | ±       |             | 156  |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 156  |
|     | QueryDefinition <QryDef>  | [1..1] |         |             | 157  |
|     | QueryType <QryTp>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 161  |
|     | SearchCriteria <SchCrit>  | [1..1] |         |             | 161  |
|     | References <Refs>   | [0..*] |         |             | 165  |
| {Or | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxld>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 165  |
| Or  | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxld>           | [1..1] | Text    |             | 165  |
| Or  | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 165  |
| Or  | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxld>                    | [1..1] | Text    |             | 165  |
| Or  | PoolIdentification <PoolId>                                       | [1..1] | Text    |             | 166  |
| Or} | CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtId>                | [1..1] | Text    |             | 166  |
|     | Status <Sts>  | [0..1] |         |             | 166  |
|     | Type <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 167  |
|     | ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±       |             | 167  |
|     | SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>                                       | [0..*] | ±       |             | 167  |
|     | Settled <Sttld>   | [0..1] | ±       | C3          | 167  |
|     | DatePeriod <DtPrd>  | [0..1] |         |             | 168  |
| {Or | Date <Dt>   | [1..1] |         |             | 168  |
| {Or | FromDate <FrDt>   | [1..1] | Date    |             | 168  |
| Or  | ToDate <ToDt>   | [1..1] | Date    |             | 169  |
| Or  | FromToDate <FrToDt>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 169  |
| Or  | EqualDate <EQDt>  | [1..1] | Date    |             | 169  |
| Or} | NotEqualDate <NEQDt>  | [1..1] | Date    |             | 169  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                   | [1..1] |          |             | 169  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>             | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>               | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>         | [1..1] | ±        |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>            | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>             | [0..*] |          |             | 170  |
| {Or | <b>Equal</b> <EQ>                        | [1..1] | ±        |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText</b> <CTTtxt>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 171  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText</b> <NCTTtxt>          | [1..1] | Text     |             | 171  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>    | [0..*] | ±        |             | 171  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr> | [0..1] | ±        |             | 171  |
|     | <b>BalanceType</b> <BalTp>               | [0..*] |          | C5          | 172  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>               | [0..1] |          |             | 173  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                         | [1..1] |          |             | 174  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                         | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 174  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±        |             | 174  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>    | [0..*] |          |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                 | [0..1] | ±        |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>                | [0..1] | ±        |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>              | [0..1] | ±        |             | 175  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 176  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>                 | [0..1] |          |             | 176  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                         | [1..1] |          |             | 176  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                         | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 177  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±        |             | 177  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>    | [0..*] |          |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                 | [0..1] | ±        |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>                | [0..1] | ±        |             | 178  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>              | [0..1] | ±        |             | 178  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 178  |



| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId> | [0..*] | ±        |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                | [0..1] | ±        |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>                   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettlementCurrency</b> <SttlmCcy>              | [0..*] | CodeSet  | C2          | 180  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>     | [0..1] |          |             | 180  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                                  | [1..1] |          |             | 181  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>                        | [1..1] | ±        |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                           | [1..1] | Date     |             | 182  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 182  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                            | [1..1] |          |             | 182  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>                  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 183  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>                 | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttlmDt>      | [0..1] |          |             | 183  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                                  | [1..1] |          |             | 184  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>                        | [1..1] | ±        |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                           | [1..1] | Date     |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                            | [1..1] |          |             | 185  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>                  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 186  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>                 | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>                            | [0..*] | ±        |             | 186  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>    | [0..*] | ±        |             | 186  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>      | [0..1] |          |             | 187  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                       | [1..1] |          |             | 187  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                 | [1..1] | Date     |             | 187  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                   | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>             | [1..1] | ±        |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                 | [1..1] |          |             | 188  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>           | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>             | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>       | [1..1] | ±        |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>          | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData> | [0..*] | ±        | C10         | 189  |

## 9.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AdditionalReasonInformationRule

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

### C4 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

- C5

**BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.
- C6

**BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.
- C7

**Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).
- C8

**CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.
- C9

**IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.
- C10

**SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 9.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 9.4.1 Identification <Id>

- Presence:

[0..1]
- Definition:

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).
- Identification <Id> contains the following DocumentIdentification51 elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>      | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 155  |
|    | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 156  |
|    | CopyDuplicate <CpyDpct>      | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 156  |
|    | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 156  |
|    | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 156  |

#### 9.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

- Presence:

[1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 9.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 9.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 9.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 9.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient** <MsgRcpt> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification </d>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 9.4.2 QueryDefinition <QryDef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the intra-balance movement instruction query criteria.

QueryDefinition <QryDef> contains the following IntraBalanceQueryDefinition11 elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>QueryType</b> <QryTp>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 161  |
|     | <b>SearchCriteria</b> <SchCrit>   | [1..1] |          |             | 161  |
|     | <b>References</b> <Refs>  | [0..*] |          |             | 165  |
| {Or | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [1..1] | Text     |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 166  |
| Or} | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b><br><CorpActnEvtId>                | [1..1] | Text     |             | 166  |
|     | <b>Status</b> <Sts>   | [0..1] |          |             | 166  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 167  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>   | [0..*] | ±        |             | 167  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>  | [0..*] | ±        |             | 167  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>  | [0..1] | ±        | C3          | 167  |
|     | <b>DatePeriod</b> <DtPrd>   | [0..1] |          |             | 168  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>  | [1..1] |          |             | 168  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 168  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>   | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>   | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>  | [1..1] |          |             | 169  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>  | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>  | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..*] |          |             | 170  |
| {Or | <b>Equal</b> <EQ>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 170  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                           | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>ContainText</b> <CTTtxt>                       | [1..1] | Text    |             | 171  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText</b> <NCTTtxt>                   | [1..1] | Text    |             | 171  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>             | [0..*] | ±       |             | 171  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>          | [0..1] | ±       |             | 171  |
|     | <b>BalanceType</b> <BalTp>                        | [0..*] |         | C5          | 172  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>                        | [0..1] |         |             | 173  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                                  | [1..1] |         |             | 174  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                                  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 174  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>                        | [1..1] | ±       |             | 174  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>             | [0..*] |         |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                          | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>                         | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 176  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>                          | [0..1] |         |             | 176  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                                  | [1..1] |         |             | 176  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                                  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 177  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>                        | [1..1] | ±       |             | 177  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>             | [0..*] |         |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                          | [0..1] | ±       |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>                         | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalld> | [0..*] | ±       |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>                   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettlementCurrency</b> <SttlmCcy>              | [0..*] | CodeSet | C2          | 180  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntniddSttlmDt>    | [0..1] |         |             | 180  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                                  | [1..1] |         |             | 181  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                            | [1..1] | Date    |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                              | [1..1] | Date    |             | 181  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                      | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>FromDate</b> <FrToDt>                     | [1..1] | ±        |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                      | [1..1] | Date     |             | 182  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 182  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                       | [1..1] |          |             | 182  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                 | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>               | [1..1] | ±        |             | 183  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>            | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttlmDt> | [0..1] |          |             | 183  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                             | [1..1] |          |             | 184  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                         | [1..1] | Date     |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate</b> <FrToDt>                     | [1..1] | ±        |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                      | [1..1] | Date     |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                       | [1..1] |          |             | 185  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                 | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>               | [1..1] | ±        |             | 186  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>            | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>                       | [0..*] | ±        |             | 186  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>          | [0..*] | ±        |             | 186  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>            | [0..1] |          |             | 187  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                             | [1..1] |          |             | 187  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 187  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                         | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate</b> <FrToDt>                     | [1..1] | ±        |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                      | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |



| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>            | [1..1] |          |             | 188  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |

#### 9.4.2.1 QueryType <QryTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the type of query.

*Datatype:* "MovementResponseType1Code" on page 485

| CodeName | Name   | Definition  |
|----------|--------|---|
| FULL     | Full   | Response will include full details on the movements reported.                         |
| STTS     | Status | Response will include limited details including the status on the movements reported. |

#### 9.4.2.2 SearchCriteria <SchCrit>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the criteria to extract the intra-balance movement instruction information.

**SearchCriteria <SchCrit>** contains the following **IntraBalanceQueryCriteria11** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>References</b> <Refs>  | [0..*] |          |             | 165  |
| {Or | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [1..1] | Text     |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 166  |
| Or} | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 166  |
|     | <b>Status</b> <Sts>   | [0..1] |          |             | 166  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 167  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrsgSts>   | [0..*] | ±        |             | 167  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>  | [0..*] | ±        |             | 167  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>  | [0..1] | ±        | C3          | 167  |
|     | <b>DatePeriod</b> <DtPrd>   | [0..1] |          |             | 168  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>  | [1..1] |          |             | 168  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 168  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>   | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>   | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>  | [1..1] |          |             | 169  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>  | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>  | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..*] |          |             | 170  |
| {Or | <b>Equal</b> <EQ>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText</b> <CTTtxt>   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 171  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText</b> <NCTTtxt>   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 171  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                           | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>             | [0..*] | ±       |             | 171  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>          | [0..1] | ±       |             | 171  |
|     | <b>BalanceType</b> <BalTp>                        | [0..*] |         | C5          | 172  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>                        | [0..1] |         |             | 173  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                                  | [1..1] |         |             | 174  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                                  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 174  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>                        | [1..1] | ±       |             | 174  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>             | [0..*] |         |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                          | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>                         | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 176  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>                          | [0..1] |         |             | 176  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                                  | [1..1] |         |             | 176  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                                  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 177  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>                        | [1..1] | ±       |             | 177  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>             | [0..*] |         |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                          | [0..1] | ±       |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>                         | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId> | [0..*] | ±       |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>                   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 179  |
|     | <b>SettlementCurrency</b> <SttlmCcy>              | [0..*] | CodeSet | C2          | 180  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>     | [0..1] |         |             | 180  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                                  | [1..1] |         |             | 181  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                            | [1..1] | Date    |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                              | [1..1] | Date    |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>                        | [1..1] | ±       |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                           | [1..1] | Date    |             | 182  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                      | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 182  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                       | [1..1] |          |             | 182  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                 | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>             | [1..1] | ±        |             | 183  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>            | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttlmDt> | [0..1] |          |             | 183  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                             | [1..1] |          |             | 184  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                         | [1..1] | Date     |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>                   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                      | [1..1] | Date     |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                       | [1..1] |          |             | 185  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                 | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>             | [1..1] | ±        |             | 186  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>            | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>                       | [0..*] | ±        |             | 186  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>          | [0..*] | ±        |             | 186  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>            | [0..1] |          |             | 187  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                             | [1..1] |          |             | 187  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 187  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                         | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>                   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                      | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                  | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                       | [1..1] |          |             | 188  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                 | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 188  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |

#### 9.4.2.2.1 References <Refs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

**References <Refs>** contains one of the following **References36Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrcrTxId>                        | [1..1] | Text |             | 165  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 166  |
| Or} | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [1..1] | Text |             | 166  |

##### 9.4.2.2.1.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 9.4.2.2.1.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 9.4.2.2.1.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 9.4.2.2.1.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrcrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 9.4.2.2.1.5 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 9.4.2.2.1.6 CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by the account servicer to unambiguously identify a corporate action event.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 9.4.2.2.2 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the status of settlement of a transaction.

**Status <Sts>** contains the following **IntraBalanceQueryStatus3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                   | [1..1] |          |             | 167  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>  | [0..*] | ±        |             | 167  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts> | [0..*] | ±        |             | 167  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>             | [0..1] | ±        | C3          | 167  |
|     | <b>DatePeriod</b> <DtPrd>          | [0..1] |          |             | 168  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                   | [1..1] |          |             | 168  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>             | [1..1] | Date     |             | 168  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>         | [1..1] | ±        |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>        | [1..1] | Date     |             | 169  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>             | [1..1] |          |             | 169  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>       | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>  | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |

#### 9.4.2.2.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the status type of query criteria.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **IntraBalanceStatusType2** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±    |             | 167  |
|    | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts> | [0..*] | ±    |             | 167  |
|    | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>             | [0..1] | ±    | C3          | 167  |

##### 9.4.2.2.2.1.1 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ProcessingStatus68Choice](#)" on page 455 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 455  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 456  |

##### 9.4.2.2.2.1.2 SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the settlement status of a transaction.

**SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>** contains one of the following elements (see "[SettlementStatus26Choice](#)" on page 449 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 449  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 449  |

##### 9.4.2.2.2.1.3 Settled <Sttld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the state or the condition.

*Impacted by:* C3 "[AdditionalReasonInformationRule](#)"

**Settled <Sttld>** contains the following elements (see "[ProprietaryReason4](#)" on page 436 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Reason <Rsn>                              | [0..1] | ±    |             | 436  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 437  |





*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.2.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.2.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 396 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |

#### 9.4.2.2.2.1.4 EqualDate <EQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.2.1.5 NotEqualDate <NEQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.2.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

**DateTime <DtTm>** contains one of the following **DateTimeSearch2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 169  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 170  |

#### 9.4.2.2.2.2.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.2.2.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.2.2.3 FromDateTime <FrToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromDateTime <FrToDtTm>** contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 398 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |
|    | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 9.4.2.2.2.2.4 EqualDateTime <EQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.2.2.5 NotEqualDateTime <NEQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

### 9.4.2.2.3 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Account in which cash is maintained.

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains one of the following **AccountIdentificationSearchCriteria2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>         | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Equal</b> <EQ>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 170  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText</b> <CTTtxt>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 171  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText</b> <NCTTtxt> | [1..1] | Text |             | 171  |

#### 9.4.2.2.3.1 Equal <EQ>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on exact identification of the account(s).

**Equal <EQ>** contains one of the following elements (see ["AccountIdentification4Choice"](#) on page 391 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | IBAN <IBAN>             | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C9          | 391  |
| Or} | Other <Othr>            | [1..1] | ±             |             | 392  |

#### 9.4.2.2.3.2 ContainText <CTTxt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on partial identification of the account(s).

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 497

#### 9.4.2.2.3.3 NotContainText <NCTTxt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on a pattern that cannot be contained in the account identification.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text"](#) on page 497

#### 9.4.2.2.4 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see ["SystemPartyIdentification8"](#) on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 9.4.2.2.5 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6 BalanceType <BalTp>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

*Impacted by:* C5 "BalanceFromToRule"

**BalanceType <BalTp>** contains the following **IntraBalanceType3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>BalanceFrom &lt;BalFr&gt;</b>              | [0..1] |         |             | 173  |
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 174  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 174  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 174  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 176  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo &lt;BalTo&gt;</b>                | [0..1] |         |             | 176  |
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 176  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 177  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 177  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |

#### Constraints

- **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

#### 9.4.2.2.6.1 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 174  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 174  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 174  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdown&gt;</b>   | [0..*] |         |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 175  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 176  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 174  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 174  |

##### 9.4.2.2.6.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 9.4.2.2.6.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.1.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 175  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 175  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 175  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 176  |

##### 9.4.2.2.6.1.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 9.4.2.2.6.1.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

##### 9.4.2.2.6.1.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.1.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3**  
elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 176  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 177  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 177  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdown&gt;</b>   | [0..*] |         |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 177  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 178  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]



*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 177  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 177  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 177  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 178  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 178  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 178  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 9.4.2.2.6.2.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 9.4.2.2.7 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 9.4.2.2.8 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice" on page 394 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | FromAmount <FrAmt>      | [1..1] | ±      |             | 394  |
| Or  | ToAmount <ToAmt>        | [1..1] | ±      |             | 394  |
| Or  | FromToAmount <FrToAmt>  | [1..1] |        |             | 394  |
|     | FromAmount <FrAmt>      | [1..1] | ±      |             | 395  |
|     | ToAmount <ToAmt>        | [1..1] | ±      |             | 395  |
| Or  | EqualAmount <EQAmt>     | [1..1] | Amount |             | 395  |
| Or} | NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 395  |

#### 9.4.2.2.9 SettledAmount <SttldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money effectively settled and which will be credited to/debited from the account owner's cash account. It may differ from the instructed settlement amount based on market tolerance level.

**SettledAmount <SttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice" on page 394 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type   | Constr.<br>No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|--------|----------------|------|
| {Or | FromAmount <FrAmt>      | [1..1] | ±      |                | 394  |
| Or  | ToAmount <ToAmt>        | [1..1] | ±      |                | 394  |
| Or  | FromToAmount <FrToAmt>  | [1..1] |        |                | 394  |
|     | FromAmount <FrAmt>      | [1..1] | ±      |                | 395  |
|     | ToAmount <ToAmt>        | [1..1] | ±      |                | 395  |
| Or  | EqualAmount <EQAmt>     | [1..1] | Amount |                | 395  |
| Or} | NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt> | [1..1] | Amount |                | 395  |

#### 9.4.2.2.10 SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Currency in which the instructed amount is expressed.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 475

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 9.4.2.2.11 IntendedSettlementDate <IntnddSttlmDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is intended to be moved.

**IntendedSettlementDate <IntnddSttlmDt>** contains one of the following  
**DateAndDateTimeSearch5Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>                  | [1..1] |          |             | 181  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | Date     |             | 182  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b>       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 182  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime &lt;DtTm&gt;</b>            | [1..1] |          |             | 182  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime &lt;FrDtTm&gt;</b>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime &lt;ToDtTm&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>FromDateTime &lt;FrToDtTm&gt;</b>    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 183  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime &lt;EQDtTm&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime &lt;NEQDtTm&gt;</b> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |

#### 9.4.2.2.11.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following **DatePeriodSearch1Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>      | [1..1] | Date |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | Date |             | 181  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>    | [1..1] | ±    |             | 182  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | Date |             | 182  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Date |             | 182  |

##### 9.4.2.2.11.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

##### 9.4.2.2.11.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.11.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 396 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |

#### 9.4.2.2.11.1.4 EqualDate <EQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.11.1.5 NotEqualDate <NEQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.11.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

**DateTime <DtTm>** contains one of the following **DateTimeSearch2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 182  |
| Or  | FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 183  |
| Or  | EqualDateTime <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |
| Or} | NotEqualDateTime <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 183  |

#### 9.4.2.2.11.2.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.11.2.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.11.2.3 FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>** contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 398 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |
|    | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 9.4.2.2.11.2.4 EqualDateTime <EQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime"](#) on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.11.2.5 NotEqualDateTime <NEQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime"](#) on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.12 EffectiveSettlementDate <FctvSttlmDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is moved.

**EffectiveSettlementDate <FctvSttlmDt>** contains one of the following  
**DateAndDateTimeSearch5Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>                  | [1..1] |          |             | 184  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | Date     |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b>       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime &lt;DtTm&gt;</b>            | [1..1] |          |             | 185  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime &lt;FrDtTm&gt;</b>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime &lt;ToDtTm&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>FromDateTime &lt;FrToDtTm&gt;</b>    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 186  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime &lt;EQDtTm&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime &lt;NEQDtTm&gt;</b> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |

#### 9.4.2.2.12.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following **DatePeriodSearch1Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>      | [1..1] | Date |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | Date |             | 184  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>    | [1..1] | ±    |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | Date |             | 185  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Date |             | 185  |

##### 9.4.2.2.12.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

##### 9.4.2.2.12.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493



#### 9.4.2.2.12.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 396 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |

#### 9.4.2.2.12.1.4 EqualDate <EQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.12.1.5 NotEqualDate <NEQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.12.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

**DateTime <DtTm>** contains one of the following **DateTimeSearch2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 185  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 186  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 186  |

#### 9.4.2.2.12.2.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.12.2.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.12.2.3 FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>** contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 398 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |
|    | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 9.4.2.2.12.2.4 EqualDateTime <EQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime"](#) on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.12.2.5 NotEqualDateTime <NEQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime"](#) on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.13 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PriorityNumeric4Choice"](#) on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 9.4.2.2.14 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see ["SystemPartyIdentification8"](#) on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 9.4.2.2.15 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the creation date/time of the intra-balance movement.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following **DateAndDateTimeSearch5Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>                  | [1..1] |          |             | 187  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 187  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | ±        |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b>       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 188  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime &lt;DtTm&gt;</b>            | [1..1] |          |             | 188  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime &lt;FrDtTm&gt;</b>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime &lt;ToDtTm&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime &lt;FrToDtTm&gt;</b>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime &lt;EQDtTm&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime &lt;NEQDtTm&gt;</b> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |

##### 9.4.2.2.15.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following **DatePeriodSearch1Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>      | [1..1] | Date |             | 187  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | Date |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | Date |             | 188  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Date |             | 188  |

##### 9.4.2.2.15.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.15.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.15.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 396 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |

#### 9.4.2.2.15.1.4 EqualDate <EQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.15.1.5 NotEqualDate <NEQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.15.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

**DateTime <DtTm>** contains one of the following **DateTimeSearch2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 188  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 189  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 189  |

#### 9.4.2.2.15.2.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 9.4.2.2.15.2.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 493](#)

#### 9.4.2.2.15.2.3 FromDateTime <FrToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromDateTime <FrToDtTm>** contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1" on page 398](#) for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |
|    | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 9.4.2.2.15.2.4 EqualDateTime <EQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 493](#)

#### 9.4.2.2.15.2.5 NotEqualDateTime <NEQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 493](#)

### 9.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C10 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1" on page 415](#) for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 10 camt.079.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementQueryResponseV02

## 10.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The IntraBalanceMovementQueryResponse message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to provide all intra-balance movement instructions satisfying the selection criteria, as defined within the query, returning current attributes and latest status.

The message may also be used to:

- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementQueryResponseV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 4 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

B. Pagination

Pagination of the message.

C. ReportGeneralDetails

General characteristics related to the report information.

D. ReportOrError

Provides information on report or error resulting from the originating query message.

## 10.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                             | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No.      | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|------------------|------|
|     | <i>Message root &lt;Document&gt; &lt;IntraBalMvmntQryRspn&gt;</i> | [1..1] |           | C3, C4, C18, C19 |      |
|     | <b>Identification</b> <Id>  | [0..1] |           |                  | 196  |
|     | <b>Identification</b> <Id>  | [1..1] | Text      |                  | 196  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>                                 | [0..1] | ±         |                  | 196  |
|     | <b>CopyDuplicate</b> <CpyDplct>                                   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |                  | 197  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>                               | [0..1] | ±         |                  | 197  |
|     | <b>MessageRecipient</b> <MsgRcpt>                                 | [0..1] | ±         |                  | 197  |
|     | <b>Pagination</b> <Pgntn>   | [1..1] | ±         |                  | 198  |
|     | <b>ReportGeneralDetails</b> <RptGnlDtls>                          | [1..1] |           | C20              | 198  |
|     | <b>QueryReference</b> <QryRef>                                    | [0..1] | Text      |                  | 199  |
|     | <b>ReportIdentification</b> <RptId>                               | [0..1] | Text      |                  | 199  |
|     | <b>QueryType</b> <QryTp>  | [1..1] | CodeSet   |                  | 199  |
|     | <b>ActivityIndicator</b> <ActvtyInd>                              | [1..1] | Indicator |                  | 199  |
|     | <b>ReportOrError</b> <RptOrErr>                                   | [0..1] |           |                  | 199  |
| {Or | <b>Movements</b> <Mvmnts>   | [1..*] |           | C8, C9, C10, C22 | 202  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>                                      | [0..1] | ±         | C15, C14         | 205  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                             | [0..1] | ±         |                  | 206  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                          | [0..1] | ±         |                  | 206  |
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>                                | [0..1] |           |                  | 207  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>                                 | [0..*] | ±         |                  | 207  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>                                | [0..*] | ±         | C17              | 208  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>  | [0..1] | ±         | C5               | 208  |
|     | <b>Movement</b> <Mvmnt>   | [1..*] |           | C16              | 209  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>                                      | [0..1] | ±         | C15, C14         | 212  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                             | [0..1] | ±         |                  | 212  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                          | [0..1] | ±         |                  | 213  |
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>                                | [0..1] |           |                  | 213  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±       |             | 213  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>                                       | [0..*] | ±       | C17         | 214  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>   | [0..1] | ±       | C5          | 214  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctOwnrTxld>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxld>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b> <MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxld>                    | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>                                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtld>                | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>MovementDetails</b> <MvmntDtls>                                       | [0..1] |         |             | 216  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 218  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 218  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 219  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 219  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                     | [0..*] |         |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 221  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 221  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 221  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 221  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                     | [0..*] |         |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 223  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 223  |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt>                        | [0..1] | ±       |             | 224  |



| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                       | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttlmAmt>                             | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>                               | [1..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttlmDt>                                | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 225  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 225  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |          |             | 225  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±        | C24         | 226  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±        | C21         | 226  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |          |             | 227  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttlmTxId>    | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b> <IntraBalMvmntId>                 | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 228  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 229  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 229  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±        | C23         | 229  |
| Or} | <b>OperationalError</b> <OprlErr>   | [1..*] |          |             | 230  |
|     | <b>Error</b> <Err>  | [1..1] |          |             | 230  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 230  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 230  |
|     | <b>Description</b> <Desc>   | [0..1] | Text     |             | 231  |

## 10.3 Constraints

### C1 **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 **ActivityIndicatorNoRule**

If ReportGeneralDetails/ActivityIndicator is equal to No (false or 0) then ReportOnError must be absent.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C4 **ActivityIndicatorYesRule**

If ReportGeneralDetails/ActivityIndicator is equal to Yes (true or 1) then ReportOnError must be present.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C5 **AdditionalReasonInformationRule**

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

### C6 **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C7 **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C8 **CashAccountOwnerRule**

CashAccountOwner must be present or Movement(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

### C9 **CashAccountRule**

CashAccount must be present or Movement(\*)/CashAccount must be present, but not both.

### C10 **CashAccountServicerRule**

CashAccountServicer must be present or Movement(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

**C11 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C12 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C13 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C14 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C15 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C16 NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule**

If no reference is available for the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification, for example, the transaction was sent by fax, then the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification must be NONREF.

**C17 PendingToFailingRule**

A pending transaction (PEND) becomes a failing transaction (PENF) on the settlement date instructed in the message, during the end of day reporting.

**C18 QueryTypeFullRule**

If ReportGeneralDetails/QueryType is equal to Full, then ReportOnError/Movements(\*)/Movement/MovementDetails must be present.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C19 QueryTypeStatusRule**

If ReportGeneralDetails/QueryType is equal to Status, then ReportOnError/Movements(\*)/Movement/MovementDetails must be absent.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C20 ReportIdentificationRule**

If Long number (Exact5NumericText) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportIdentification must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different report identifications. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportIdentification 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

#### **C21 ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### **C22 StatusAndReasonRule**

StatusAndReason must be present or Movement(\*)/StatusAndReason must be present, but not both.

#### **C23 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### **C24 WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

## **10.4 Message Building Blocks**

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### **10.4.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 196  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 196  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 197  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 197  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 197  |

#### **10.4.1.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **10.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 10.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* ["CopyDuplicate1Code"](#) on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 10.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification136"](#) on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 10.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 10.4.2 Pagination <Pgntn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Pagination of the message.

**Pagination <Pgntn>** contains the following elements (see "[Pagination1](#)" on page 412 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>       | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | PageNumber <PgNb>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 412  |
|    | LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 412  |

## 10.4.3 ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* General characteristics related to the report information.

*Impacted by:* [C20 "ReportIdentificationRule"](#)

**ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>** contains the following **MovementReport1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>              | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>QueryReference</b> <QryRef>       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 199  |
|    | <b>ReportIdentification</b> <RptId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 199  |
|    | <b>QueryType</b> <QryTp>             | [1..1] | CodeSet   |             | 199  |
|    | <b>ActivityIndicator</b> <ActvtyInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 199  |

### Constraints

- **ReportIdentificationRule**

If Long number (Exact5NumericText) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportIdentification must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different report identifications. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportIdentification 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

#### 10.4.3.1 QueryReference <QryRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the Query message sent to request this statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.3.2 ReportIdentification <RptId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference common to all pages of a report.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.3.3 QueryType <QryTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the type of query.

*Datatype:* "MovementResponseType1Code" on page 485

| CodeName | Name   | Definition  |
|----------|--------|---|
| FULL     | Full   | Response will include full details on the movements reported.                         |
| STTS     | Status | Response will include limited details including the status on the movements reported. |

#### 10.4.3.4 ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether there is activity or information update reported in the statement.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

### 10.4.4 ReportOrError <RptOrErr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on report or error resulting from the originating query message.

**ReportOrError <RptOrErr>** contains one of the following **IntraBalanceOrOperationalError11Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No.      | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|------------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Movements</b> <Mvmnts>  | [1..*] |         | C8, C9, C10, C22 | 202  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>   | [0..1] | ±       | C15, C14         | 205  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |                  | 206  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                 | [0..1] | ±       |                  | 206  |
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>                                       | [0..1] |         |                  | 207  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±       |                  | 207  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>                                       | [0..*] | ±       | C17              | 208  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>   | [0..1] | ±       | C5               | 208  |
|     | <b>Movement</b> <Mvmnt>  | [1..*] |         | C16              | 209  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>   | [0..1] | ±       | C15, C14         | 212  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |                  | 212  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                 | [0..1] | ±       |                  | 213  |
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>                                       | [0..1] |         |                  | 213  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±       |                  | 213  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>                                       | [0..*] | ±       | C17              | 214  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>   | [0..1] | ±       | C5               | 214  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctOwnrTxld>              | [1..1] | Text    |                  | 215  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxld>           | [0..1] | Text    |                  | 215  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b> <MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text    |                  | 215  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxld>                    | [0..1] | Text    |                  | 215  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <Poolld>                                       | [0..1] | Text    |                  | 215  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtld>                | [0..1] | Text    |                  | 215  |
|     | <b>MovementDetails</b> <MvmntDtls>                                       | [0..1] |         |                  | 216  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |                  | 218  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |                  | 218  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |                  | 219  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |                  | 219  |



| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                   | [0..*] |          |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 220  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 220  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                 | [0..1] | ±        |             | 220  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |          |             | 221  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 221  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 221  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 221  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                   | [0..*] |          |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                 | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                      | [1..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt>                       | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttlmAmt>                         | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>                           | [1..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttlmDt>                            | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 225  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalld>                       | [0..1] | ±        |             | 225  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |          |             | 225  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrpgPos>                                     | [0..1] | ±        | C24         | 226  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±        | C21         | 226  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |          |             | 227  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b> <ScitiesSttlmTxld> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b> <IntraPosMvmntld>            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b> <IntraBalMvmntld>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxld>          | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 228  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 229  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrccgAddtlDtls>      | [0..1] | Text     |             | 229  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±        | C23         | 229  |
| Or} | <b>OperationalError</b> <OprlErr>   | [1..*] |          |             | 230  |
|     | <b>Error</b> <Err>  | [1..1] |          |             | 230  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 230  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 230  |
|     | <b>Description</b> <Desc>   | [0..1] | Text     |             | 231  |

#### 10.4.4.1 Movements <Mvmnts>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Identifies the transactions.

*Impacted by:* C8 "CashAccountOwnerRule", C9 "CashAccountRule", C10 "CashAccountServicerRule", C22 "StatusAndReasonRule"

**Movements <Mvmnts>** contains the following **IntraBalanceMovements4** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>   | [0..1] | ±       | C15,<br>C14 | 205  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 206  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                 | [0..1] | ±       |             | 206  |
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>                                       | [0..1] |         |             | 207  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±       |             | 207  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>                                       | [0..*] | ±       | C17         | 208  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>   | [0..1] | ±       | C5          | 208  |
|     | <b>Movement</b> <Mvmnt>  | [1..*] |         | C16         | 209  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>   | [0..1] | ±       | C15,<br>C14 | 212  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 212  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                 | [0..1] | ±       |             | 213  |
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>                                       | [0..1] |         |             | 213  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±       |             | 213  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>                                       | [0..*] | ±       | C17         | 214  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>   | [0..1] | ±       | C5          | 214  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctOwnrTxld>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxld>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b> <MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxld>                    | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>                                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtld>                | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>MovementDetails</b> <MvmntDtls>                                       | [0..1] |         |             | 216  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 218  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 218  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 219  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 219  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                     | [0..*] |         |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 220  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±        |             | 220  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |          |             | 221  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 221  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 221  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 221  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |          |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttlmAmt>                             | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>                               | [1..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttlmDt>                                | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 225  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalld>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 225  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |          |             | 225  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrpgPos>   | [0..1] | ±        | C24         | 226  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±        | C21         | 226  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |          |             | 227  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxld>   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntld>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntld>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxld>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <Poolld>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                      | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±        |             | 228  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>                                   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>                                     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 229  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrccAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text     |             | 229  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                | [0..*] | ±        | C23         | 229  |

#### Constraints

- **CashAccountOwnerRule**

CashAccountOwner must be present or Movement(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

- **CashAccountRule**

CashAccount must be present or Movement(\*)/CashAccount must be present, but not both.

- **CashAccountServicerRule**

CashAccountServicer must be present or Movement(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

- **StatusAndReasonRule**

StatusAndReason must be present or Movement(\*)/StatusAndReason must be present, but not both.

#### 10.4.4.1.1 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which an entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C15 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C14 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

## Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
 Or      /Proxy Must be present

### 10.4.4.1.2 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

### 10.4.4.1.3 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 10.4.4.1.4 StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Status and status reason of the transaction.

**StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>** contains the following **IntraBalanceStatusAndReason2** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±    |             | 207  |
|    | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts> | [0..*] | ±    | C17         | 208  |
|    | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>             | [0..1] | ±    | C5          | 208  |

##### 10.4.4.1.4.1 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ProcessingStatus67Choice" on page 456 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 456  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or  | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or  | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |

#### 10.4.4.1.4.2 SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the settlement status of a transaction.

*Impacted by:* C17 "PendingToFailingRule"

**SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"SettlementStatus16Choice" on page 459 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Pending <Pdg>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 460  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 460  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 460  |
| Or  | Failing <Fng>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 461  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 461  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 461  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>            | [1..1] | ±       |             | 461  |

#### Constraints

- **PendingToFailingRule**

A pending transaction (PEND) becomes a failing transaction (PENF) on the settlement date instructed in the message, during the end of day reporting.

#### 10.4.4.1.4.3 Settled <Sttld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the state or the condition.

*Impacted by:* C5 "AdditionalReasonInformationRule"



**Settled <Sttld>** contains the following elements (see ["ProprietaryReason4"](#) on page 436 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Reason <Rsn>                              | [0..1] | ±    |             | 436  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 437  |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalReasonInformationRule**

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

#### 10.4.4.1.5 Movement <Mvmnt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the individual intrabalance movement transaction.

*Impacted by:* [C16 "NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule"](#)

**Movement <Mvmnt>** contains the following **IntraBalanceMovement7** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±       | C15,<br>C14 | 212  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 212  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±       |             | 213  |
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>  | [0..1] |         |             | 213  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>   | [0..*] | ±       |             | 213  |
|     | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts>  | [0..*] | ±       | C17         | 214  |
|     | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>  | [0..1] | ±       | C5          | 214  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxld>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxld>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrcrTxld>                        | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <Poolld>  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtld>                   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 215  |
|     | <b>MovementDetails</b> <MvmntDtls>  | [0..1] |         |             | 216  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 218  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 218  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 219  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 219  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |         |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 221  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 221  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 221  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 221  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |         |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 222  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                       | [1..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt>                        | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttlmAmt>                          | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>                            | [1..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttlmDt>                             | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>  | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 225  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalld>                        | [0..1] | ±        |             | 225  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>  | [0..*] |          |             | 225  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>                                      | [0..1] | ±        | C24         | 226  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>   | [0..1] | ±        | C21         | 226  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>   | [1..1] |          |             | 227  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b> <ScitiesSttlmTxld>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b> <IntraPosMvmntld>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b> <IntraBalMvmntld>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxld>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b> <MktlnfrstrctrTxld> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <Poolld>                                       | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxld>                         | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 228  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>                                      | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>  | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 229  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 229  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                   | [0..*] | ±        | C23         | 229  |

## Constraints

- **NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule**

If no reference is available for the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification, for example, the transaction was sent by fax, then the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification must be NONREF.

### 10.4.4.1.5.1 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* [C15 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C14 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see ["CashAccount40"](#) on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

## Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

### 10.4.4.1.5.2 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see ["SystemPartyIdentification8"](#) on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.3 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.4 StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Status and status reason of the transaction.

**StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>** contains the following **IntraBalanceStatusAndReason2** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±    |             | 213  |
|    | <b>SettlementStatus</b> <SttlmSts> | [0..*] | ±    | C17         | 214  |
|    | <b>Settled</b> <Sttld>             | [0..1] | ±    | C5          | 214  |

##### 10.4.4.1.5.4.1 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ProcessingStatus67Choice" on page 456 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 456  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or  | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or  | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.4.2 SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the settlement status of a transaction.

*Impacted by:* C17 "PendingToFailingRule"

**SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"SettlementStatus16Choice" on page 459 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Pending <Pdg>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 460  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 460  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 460  |
| Or  | Failing <Fng>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 461  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 461  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 461  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>            | [1..1] | ±       |             | 461  |

#### Constraints

- **PendingToFailingRule**

A pending transaction (PEND) becomes a failing transaction (PENF) on the settlement date instructed in the message, during the end of day reporting.

#### 10.4.4.1.5.4.3 Settled <Sttld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the state or the condition.

*Impacted by:* C5 "AdditionalReasonInformationRule"

**Settled <Sttld>** contains the following elements (see "ProprietaryReason4" on page 436 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Reason <Rsn>                              | [0..1] | ±    |             | 436  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 437  |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalReasonInformationRule**

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

#### 10.4.4.1.5.5 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.6 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.7 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.8 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.9 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.10 CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by the account servicer to unambiguously identify a corporate action event.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

**10.4.4.1.5.11 MovementDetails <MvmntDtls>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies additional details of the transaction.



**MovementDetails <MvmntDtls>** contains the following **IntraBalanceMovement6** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>                        | [1..1] |          |             | 218  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                                  | [1..1] |          |             | 218  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                                  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 219  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>                        | [1..1] | ±        |             | 219  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>             | [0..*] |          |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                          | [0..1] | ±        |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>                         | [0..1] | ±        |             | 220  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>                       | [0..1] | ±        |             | 220  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 220  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>                          | [1..1] |          |             | 221  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                                  | [1..1] |          |             | 221  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                                  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 221  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>                        | [1..1] | ±        |             | 221  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>             | [0..*] |          |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                          | [0..1] | ±        |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>                         | [0..1] | ±        |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>                       | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                | [1..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>                   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 223  |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt> | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttlmAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>     | [1..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttlmDt>      | [0..1] | ±        |             | 224  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>                         | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 225  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId> | [0..1] | ±        |             | 225  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>                           | [0..*] |          |             | 225  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>               | [0..1] | ±        | C24         | 226  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>                      | [0..1] | ±        | C21         | 226  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>                            | [1..1] |          |             | 227  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><ScetiesSttlmTxId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 228  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 228  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 229  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 229  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrccgAddtlDtls>      | [0..1] | Text     |             | 229  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±        | C23         | 229  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom** <BalFr> contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 218  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 219  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 219  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>    | [0..*] |         |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 219  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 220  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 219  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 219  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 219  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 220  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 220  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 220  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>              | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>     | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.1.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 221  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 221  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 221  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdw&gt;</b>     | [0..*] |         |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 222  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 223  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 223  |

##### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 221  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 221  |

##### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 222  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 222  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 223  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 223  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>              | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>     | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.2.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.3 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money effectively settled and which will be credited to/debited from the account owner's cash account. It may differ from the instructed settlement amount based on market tolerance level.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "Amount2Choice" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.4 SettledAmount <SttldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money effectively settled and which will be credited to/debited from the account owner's cash account. It may differ from the instructed settlement amount based on market tolerance level.

**SettledAmount <SttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "Amount2Choice" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.5 PreviouslySettledAmount <PrevsllySttldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money previously settled.

**PreviouslySettledAmount <PrevsllySttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "Amount2Choice" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.6 RemainingSettlementAmount <RmngSttldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remaining to be settled.

**RemainingSettlementAmount <RmngSttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "Amount2Choice" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.7 IntendedSettlementDate <IntnddSttldDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is intended to be moved.

**IntendedSettlementDate <IntnddSttldDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.8 EffectiveSettlementDate <FctvSttldDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is moved.



**EffectiveSettlementDate <FctvSttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.9 StatusDate <StsDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the status was assigned.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.10 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11 Linkages <Lnkgs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Link to another transaction that must be processed after, before or at the same time.

**Linkages <Lnkgs>** contains the following **Linkages57** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±    | C24         | 226  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±    | C21         | 226  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |      |             | 227  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><ScitiesSttlmTxId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±    |             | 228  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.1 ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* When the transaction is to be executed relative to a linked transaction.

*Impacted by:* C24 "WithLinkageRule"

**ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>** contains one of the following elements (see "ProcessingPosition7Choice" on page 412 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 413  |

#### Constraints

- **WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.2 MessageNumber <MsgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Message type number/message identifier of the message referenced in the linkage sequence.

*Impacted by:* C21 "ShortLongNumberRule"

**MessageNumber <MsgNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "DocumentNumber5Choice" on page 399 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | ShortNumber <ShrtNb>        | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or  | LongNumber <LngNb>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or} | ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 399  |

#### Constraints

- **ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.3 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference to the linked transaction.

**Reference <Ref>** contains one of the following **References34Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 227  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 228  |

##### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.3.1 SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification <SctiesSttlmTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a securities settlement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.3.2 IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-position movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.3.3 IntraBalanceMovementIdentification <IntraBalMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-balance movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.3.4 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.3.5 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.3.6 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.3.7 OtherTransactionIdentification <OthrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction that cannot be identified using a standard reference element present in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.11.4 ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party responsible for generating the reference.

**ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "PartyIdentification127Choice" on page 419 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 419  |
| Or} | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 420  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.12 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PriorityNumeric4Choice"](#) on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.13 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see ["SystemPartyIdentification8"](#) on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.14 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date/time on which the trade was executed.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime"](#) on page 493

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.15 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* ["Max350Text"](#) on page 497

#### 10.4.4.1.5.11.16 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C23 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1" on page 415](#) for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 10.4.4.2 OperationalError <OprlErr>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Operational error resulting from a rejection.

**OperationalError <OprlErr>** contains the following **ErrorHandling5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Error</b> <Err>         | [1..1] |         |             | 230  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 230  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 230  |
|     | <b>Description</b> <Desc>  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 231  |

#### 10.4.4.2.1 Error <Err>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in coded or proprietary form.

**Error <Err>** contains one of the following **ErrorHandling3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 230  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 230  |

##### 10.4.4.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in coded form.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalSystemErrorHandling1Code" on page 481](#)

##### 10.4.4.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in free format.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **10.4.4.2.2 Description <Desc>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in free format.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 496

# 11 camt.080.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementModificationQueryV02

## 11.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The IntraBalanceMovementModificationQuery message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to query for the status of intra-balance movement modification instruction(s) based on a set of search criteria or business attributes.

The message may also be used to:

- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementModificationQueryV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

### A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

### B. QueryDefinition

Defines the intra-balance movement modification query criteria.

### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.



## 11.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>         | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntModQry> | [1..1] |          |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>                           | [0..1] |          |             | 234  |
|     | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 235  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>                    | [0..1] | ±        |             | 235  |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>                      | [0..1] | CodeSet  |             | 235  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 236  |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>                    | [0..1] | ±        |             | 236  |
|     | QueryDefinition <QryDef>                      | [1..1] |          |             | 236  |
|     | QueryType <QryTp>                             | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 237  |
|     | SearchCriteria <SchCrit>                      | [1..1] |          |             | 238  |
|     | ModificationRequestIdentification <ModReqId>  | [0..*] | Text     |             | 238  |
|     | ProcessingStatus <PrpgSts>                    | [0..*] | ±        |             | 239  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>                         | [0..*] |          |             | 239  |
| {Or | Equal <EQ>                                    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 239  |
| Or  | ContainText <CTTtxt>                          | [1..1] | Text     |             | 239  |
| Or} | NotContainText <NCTTtxt>                      | [1..1] | Text     |             | 239  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                | [0..*] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>             | [0..1] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                  | [0..*] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>                    | [0..1] |          |             | 241  |
| {Or | Date <Dt>                                     | [1..1] |          |             | 241  |
| {Or | FromDate <FrDt>                               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or  | ToDate <ToDt>                                 | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or  | FromToDate <FrToDt>                           | [1..1] | ±        |             | 242  |
| Or  | EqualDate <EQDt>                              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or} | NotEqualDate <NEQDt>                          | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>                               | [1..1] |          |             | 242  |
| {Or | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>                         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>                           | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>                     | [1..1] | ±        |             | 243  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>          | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData> | [0..*] | ±        | C5          | 244  |

## 11.3 Constraints

### C1 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C2 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C3 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C4 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### C5 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 11.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 11.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 235  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 235  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 235  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 236  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 236  |

#### 11.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 11.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 11.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 11.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 11.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

### 11.4.2 QueryDefinition <QryDef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the intra-balance movement modification query criteria.

**QueryDefinition <QryDef>** contains the following **IntraBalanceQueryDefinition12** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                             | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>QueryType</b> <QryTp>                            | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 237  |
|     | <b>SearchCriteria</b> <SchCrit>                     | [1..1] |          |             | 238  |
|     | <b>ModificationRequestIdentification</b> <ModReqId> | [0..*] | Text     |             | 238  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrgSts>                    | [0..*] | ±        |             | 239  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>                        | [0..*] |          |             | 239  |
| {Or | <b>Equal</b> <EQ>                                   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 239  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText</b> <CTTxt>                          | [1..1] | Text     |             | 239  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText</b> <NCTTxt>                      | [1..1] | Text     |             | 239  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>               | [0..*] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>            | [0..1] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>                 | [0..*] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>                   | [0..1] |          |             | 241  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                                    | [1..1] |          |             | 241  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                                | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>                          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                             | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                         | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                              | [1..1] |          |             | 242  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                          | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>                    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                       | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>                   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |

#### 11.4.2.1 QueryType <QryTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the type of query.

*Datatype:* "MovementResponseType1Code" on page 485

| CodeName | Name | Definition  |
|----------|------|---|
| FULL     | Full | Response will include full details on the movements reported. |

| CodeName | Name   | Definition  |
|----------|--------|---|
| STTS     | Status | Response will include limited details including the status on the movements reported. |

#### 11.4.2.2 SearchCriteria <SchCrit>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the criteria to extract the intra-balance movement instruction information.

**SearchCriteria <SchCrit>** contains the following **IntraBalanceQueryCriteria12** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                             | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ModificationRequestIdentification</b> <ModReqId> | [0..*] | Text     |             | 238  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrccgSts>                  | [0..*] | ±        |             | 239  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>                        | [0..*] |          |             | 239  |
| {Or | <b>Equal</b> <EQ>                                   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 239  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText</b> <CTTtxt>                         | [1..1] | Text     |             | 239  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText</b> <NCTTtxt>                     | [1..1] | Text     |             | 239  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>               | [0..*] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>            | [0..1] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>                 | [0..*] | ±        |             | 240  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>                   | [0..1] |          |             | 241  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                                    | [1..1] |          |             | 241  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                                | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>                          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                             | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                         | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                              | [1..1] |          |             | 242  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                          | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>                    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                       | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>                   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |

##### 11.4.2.2.1 ModificationRequestIdentification <ModReqId>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 11.4.2.2.2 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the status of settlement of a transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see "ModificationProcessingStatus9Choice" on page 448 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 448  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 449  |

#### 11.4.2.2.3 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Account in which cash is maintained.

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains one of the following **AccountIdentificationSearchCriteria2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>         | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Equal</b> <EQ>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 239  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText</b> <CTTtxt>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 239  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText</b> <NCTTtxt> | [1..1] | Text |             | 239  |

##### 11.4.2.2.3.1 Equal <EQ>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on exact identification of the account(s).

**Equal <EQ>** contains one of the following elements (see "AccountIdentification4Choice" on page 391 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | IBAN <IBAN>             | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C9          | 391  |
| Or} | Other <Othr>            | [1..1] | ±             |             | 392  |

##### 11.4.2.2.3.2 ContainText <CTTtxt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on partial identification of the account(s).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 11.4.2.2.3.3 NotContainText <NCTTtxt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on a pattern that cannot be contained in the account identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 11.4.2.2.4 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 11.4.2.2.5 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 11.4.2.2.6 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.



| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                  | [1..1] |          |             | 241  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate</b> <FrToDt>          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>           | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 242  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>            | [1..1] |          |             | 242  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |

*Definition:* Specified date.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following **DatePeriodSearch1Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>      | [1..1] | Date |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>        | [1..1] | Date |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate</b> <FrToDt>    | [1..1] | ±    |             | 242  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>     | [1..1] | Date |             | 242  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt> | [1..1] | Date |             | 242  |

#### 11.4.2.2.7.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 11.4.2.2.7.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 11.4.2.2.7.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 396 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |

#### 11.4.2.2.7.1.4 EqualDate <EQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 11.4.2.2.7.1.5 NotEqualDate <NEQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 11.4.2.2.7.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

**DateTime <DtTm>** contains one of the following **DateTimeSearch2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 243  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 243  |

#### 11.4.2.2.7.2.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 493

#### 11.4.2.2.7.2.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 493

#### 11.4.2.2.7.2.3 FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>** contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 398 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |
|    | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 11.4.2.2.7.2.4 EqualDateTime <EQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 493

#### 11.4.2.2.7.2.5 NotEqualDateTime <NEQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 493

## 11.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C5 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 12 camt.081.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementModificationReportV0 2

## 12.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The IntraBalanceMovementModificationReport message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to provide full details or current status values of the intra-balance movement modification request(s), as defined within the query.

The message may also be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").

### Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementModificationReportV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 5 MessageBuildingBlocks:

#### A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

#### B. Pagination

Pagination of the message.

#### C. ReportGeneralDetails

General characteristics related to the report information.

#### D. ReportOrError

Provides information on report or error resulting from the originating query message.

#### E. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 12.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>         | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No.        | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|--------------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntModRpt> | [1..1] |           | C3, C4, C21, C22   |      |
|     | Identification <Id>                           | [0..1] |           |                    | 251  |
|     | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | Text      |                    | 251  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>                    | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 252  |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>                      | [0..1] | CodeSet   |                    | 252  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                  | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 252  |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>                    | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 252  |
|     | Pagination <Pgntn>                            | [1..1] | ±         |                    | 253  |
|     | ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnlDtls>             | [1..1] |           | C23                | 253  |
|     | ReportNumber <RptNb>                          | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 254  |
|     | QueryReference <QryRef>                       | [0..1] | Text      |                    | 254  |
|     | ReportIdentification <RptId>                  | [0..1] | Text      |                    | 254  |
|     | ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>                      | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 254  |
|     | ReportPeriod <RptPrd>                         | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 254  |
|     | QueryType <QryTp>                             | [0..1] | CodeSet   |                    | 255  |
|     | Frequency <Frqcy>                             | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 255  |
|     | UpdateType <UpdTp>                            | [1..1] | ±         |                    | 255  |
|     | ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>                 | [1..1] | Indicator |                    | 255  |
|     | ReportOrError <RptOrErr>                      | [0..1] |           |                    | 256  |
| {Or | Modifications <Mods>                          | [1..*] |           | C10, C11, C12, C20 | 259  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>                         | [0..1] | ±         | C17, C16           | 262  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 263  |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>             | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 263  |
|     | ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>                    | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 263  |
|     | Modification <Mod>                            | [1..*] |           |                    | 264  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>                         | [0..1] | ±         | C17, C16           | 266  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 267  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                       | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±         |             | 267  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 268  |
|     | <b>RequestReference</b> <ReqRef>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 268  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime  |             | 269  |
|     | <b>RequestDetails</b> <ReqDtls>   | [0..1] |           | C18,<br>C19 | 269  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 272  |
|     | <b>Linkage</b> <Lkg>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>OtherProcessing</b> <OthrPrcg>   | [0..*] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>PartialSettlementIndicator</b> <PrtlSttlmInd>                            | [0..1] | Indicator |             | 272  |
|     | <b>ClearingChannel</b> <ClrChanl>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 273  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |           |             | 273  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±         | C26         | 273  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±         | C24         | 274  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 274  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttlmTxId>    | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b> <IntraBalMvmntId>                 | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 276  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text      |             | 276  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 276  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                 | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                       | [0..1] |         | C5, C8      | 276  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                    | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>                                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 279  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 281  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 281  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 284  |
| Or} | <b>OperationalError</b> <OpriErr>                                     | [1..*] |         |             | 284  |
|     | <b>Error</b> <Err>  | [1..1] |         |             | 284  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 284  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 284  |
|     | <b>Description</b> <Desc>   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 285  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                | [0..*] | ±       | C25         | 285  |



## 12.3 Constraints

### C1 **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 **ActivityIndicatorNoRule**

If ReportGeneralDetails/ActivityIndicator is equal to No (false or 0) then ReportOrError must be absent.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C4 **ActivityIndicatorYesRule**

If ReportGeneralDetails/ActivityIndicator is equal to Yes (true or 1) then ReportOrError must be present.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C5 **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

### C6 **AdditionalReasonInformationRule**

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

### C7 **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C8 **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

### C9 **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C10 **CashAccountOwnerRule**

CashAccountOwner must be present or Cancellation(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

**C11 CashAccountRule**

CashAccount must be present or Cancellation(\*)/CashAccount must be present, but not both.

**C12 CashAccountServicerRule**

CashAccountServicer must be present or Cancellation(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

**C13 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C14 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C15 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C16 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C17 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C18 ModificationRequestPresenceRule**

At least one modification request type element must be present.

**C19 OtherProcessingRule**

If OtherProcessing is used, then its usage must be pre-agreed between the sender and the receiver.

**C20 ProcessingStatusRule**

ProcessingStatus must be present or Cancellation(\*)/ProcessingStatus must be present, but not both.

**C21 QueryTypeFullRule**

If ReportGeneralDetails/QueryType is equal to Full, then ReportOrError/Modifications(\*)/Modification/UnderlyingIntraBalance must be present.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C22 QueryTypeStatusRule**

If ReportGeneralDetails/QueryType is equal to Status, then ReportOrError/Modifications(\*)/Modification/UnderlyingIntraBalance must be absent.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C23 ReportNumberRule

If Long number (Exact5NumericTest) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportNumber must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different ReportNumbers. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportNumber 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

### C24 ShortLongNumberRule

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

### C25 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### C26 WithLinkageRule

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

## 12.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 12.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 251  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 252  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 252  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 252  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 252  |

#### 12.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 12.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 12.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 12.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 12.4.2 Pagination <Pgntn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Pagination of the message.

**Pagination <Pgntn>** contains the following elements (see "[Pagination1](#)" on page 412 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>       | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | PageNumber <PgNb>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 412  |
|    | LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 412  |

## 12.4.3 ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* General characteristics related to the report information.

*Impacted by:* [C23 "ReportNumberRule"](#)

**ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>** contains the following **IntraBalanceReport5** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>              | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>ReportNumber</b> <RptNb>          | [0..1] | ±         |             | 254  |
|    | <b>QueryReference</b> <QryRef>       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 254  |
|    | <b>ReportIdentification</b> <RptId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 254  |
|    | <b>ReportDateTime</b> <RptDtTm>      | [0..1] | ±         |             | 254  |
|    | <b>ReportPeriod</b> <RptPrd>         | [0..1] | ±         |             | 254  |
|    | <b>QueryType</b> <QryTp>             | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 255  |
|    | <b>Frequency</b> <Frqcy>             | [0..1] | ±         |             | 255  |
|    | <b>UpdateType</b> <UpdTp>            | [1..1] | ±         |             | 255  |
|    | <b>ActivityIndicator</b> <ActvtyInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 255  |

### Constraints

- ReportNumberRule**

If Long number (Exact5NumericTest) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportNumber must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different ReportNumbers. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportNumber 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

#### 12.4.3.1 ReportNumber <RptNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the report.

**ReportNumber <RptNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Number3Choice](#)" on page 410 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Short <Shrt>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |
| Or} | Long <Lng>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |

#### 12.4.3.2 QueryReference <QryRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the query message sent to request this statement.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

#### 12.4.3.3 ReportIdentification <RptId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference common to all pages of a statement.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

#### 12.4.3.4 ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when the report was created.

**ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 12.4.3.5 ReportPeriod <RptPrd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Period for the statement.

**ReportPeriod <RptPrd>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Period7Choice"](#) on page 396 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>               | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | FromDateTimeToDateTime <FrDtTmToDtTm> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |
| Or} | FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>             | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |

#### 12.4.3.6 QueryType <QryTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Defines the type of query.

*Datatype:* ["MovementResponseType1Code"](#) on page 485

| CodeName | Name   | Definition  |
|----------|--------|---|
| FULL     | Full   | Response will include full details on the movements reported.                         |
| STTS     | Status | Response will include limited details including the status on the movements reported. |

#### 12.4.3.7 Frequency <Frqcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Frequency of the statement.

**Frequency <Frqcy>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Frequency22Choice"](#) on page 407 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 407  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 408  |

#### 12.4.3.8 UpdateType <UpdTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the statement is complete or contains changes only.

**UpdateType <UpdTp>** contains one of the following elements (see ["UpdateType15Choice"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 415  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 415  |

#### 12.4.3.9 ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether there is activity or information update reported in the statement.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[YesNoIndicator](#)" on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

## 12.4.4 ReportOrError <RptOrErr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on report or error resulting from the originating query message.



**ReportOrError <RptOrErr>** contains one of the following **IntraBalanceOrOperationalError12Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No.                 | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-----------------------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Modifications</b> <Mods>   | [1..*] |           | C10,<br>C11,<br>C12,<br>C20 | 259  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±         | C17,<br>C16                 | 262  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±         |                             | 263  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±         |                             | 263  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>   | [0..1] | ±         |                             | 263  |
|     | <b>Modification</b> <Mod>   | [1..*] |           |                             | 264  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±         | C17,<br>C16                 | 266  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±         |                             | 267  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±         |                             | 267  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>   | [0..1] | ±         |                             | 268  |
|     | <b>RequestReference</b> <ReqRef>  | [1..1] | Text      |                             | 268  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime  |                             | 269  |
|     | <b>RequestDetails</b> <ReqDtls>   | [0..1] |           | C18,<br>C19                 | 269  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |                             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text      |                             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text      |                             | 271  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text      |                             | 271  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrcrTxId>                        | [0..1] | Text      |                             | 271  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text      |                             | 272  |
|     | <b>Linkage</b> <Lkg>  | [0..1] | ±         |                             | 272  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prt>   | [0..1] | ±         |                             | 272  |
|     | <b>OtherProcessing</b> <OthrPrcg>   | [0..*] | ±         |                             | 272  |
|     | <b>PartialSettlementIndicator</b> <PrtlSttlmlnd>                            | [0..1] | Indicator |                             | 272  |
|     | <b>ClearingChannel</b> <ClrChanl>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |                             | 273  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |           |                             | 273  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±         | C26                         | 273  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±       | C24         | 274  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |         |             | 274  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 276  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text    |             | 276  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 276  |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                             | [0..1] |         | C5, C8      | 276  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 279  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |         |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 281  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 281  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |         |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrdgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 284  |
| Or} | <b>OperationalError</b> <OprlErr>                                     | [1..*] |         |             | 284  |
|     | <b>Error</b> <Err>  | [1..1] |         |             | 284  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 284  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 284  |
|     | <b>Description</b> <Desc>   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 285  |

#### 12.4.4.1 Modifications <Mods>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Further details of the intrabalance modification transactions.

*Impacted by:* C10 "CashAccountOwnerRule", C11 "CashAccountRule", C12 "CashAccountServicerRule", C20 "ProcessingStatusRule"

**Modifications <Mods>** contains the following **IntraBalanceModification7** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±         | C17,<br>C16 | 262  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±         |             | 263  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±         |             | 263  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 263  |
|     | <b>Modification</b> <Mod>   | [1..*] |           |             | 264  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±         | C17,<br>C16 | 266  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±         |             | 267  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±         |             | 267  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 268  |
|     | <b>RequestReference</b> <ReqRef>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 268  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime  |             | 269  |
|     | <b>RequestDetails</b> <ReqDtls>   | [0..1] |           | C18,<br>C19 | 269  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 272  |
|     | <b>Linkage</b> <Lkg>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>OtherProcessing</b> <OthrPrcg>   | [0..*] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>PartialSettlementIndicator</b> <PrtlSttlmInd>                            | [0..1] | Indicator |             | 272  |
|     | <b>ClearingChannel</b> <ClrChanl>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 273  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |           |             | 273  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±         | C26         | 273  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±         | C24         | 274  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 274  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 276  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text    |             | 276  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 276  |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                             | [0..1] |         | C5, C8      | 276  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 279  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |         |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 281  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 281  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |         |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrpgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text |             | 284  |

#### Constraints

- **CashAccountOwnerRule**

CashAccountOwner must be present or Cancellation(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

- **CashAccountRule**

CashAccount must be present or Cancellation(\*)/CashAccount must be present, but not both.

- **CashAccountServicerRule**

CashAccountServicer must be present or Cancellation(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

- **ProcessingStatusRule**

ProcessingStatus must be present or Cancellation(\*)/ProcessingStatus must be present, but not both.

#### 12.4.4.1.1 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C16 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 12.4.4.1.2 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see  
"SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 12.4.4.1.3 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 12.4.4.1.4 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Status and status reason of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ProcessingStatus71Choice" on page 450 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr.<br>No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|----------------|------|
| {Or | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |                | 450  |
| Or  | Pending <Pdg>                     | [1..1] | ±    |                | 450  |
| Or  | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |                | 451  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |                | 451  |
| Or  | Denied <Dnd>                      | [1..1] | ±    |                | 452  |
| Or  | Completed <Cmpltd>                | [1..1] | ±    | C5             | 452  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |                | 452  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5 Modification <Mod>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Further details of the individual intrabalance modification transaction.



**Modification <Mod>** contains the following **IntraBalanceModification8** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±         | C17,<br>C16 | 266  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±         |             | 267  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±         |             | 267  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrcgSts>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 268  |
|     | <b>RequestReference</b> <ReqRef>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 268  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime  |             | 269  |
|     | <b>RequestDetails</b> <ReqDtls>   | [0..1] |           | C18,<br>C19 | 269  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 272  |
|     | <b>Linkage</b> <Lkg>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>OtherProcessing</b> <OthrPrcg>   | [0..*] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>PartialSettlementIndicator</b> <PrtlSttlmInd>                            | [0..1] | Indicator |             | 272  |
|     | <b>ClearingChannel</b> <ClrChanl>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 273  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |           |             | 273  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±         | C26         | 273  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±         | C24         | 274  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 274  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>                                    | [1..1] | Text    |             | 276  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                      | [1..1] | Text    |             | 276  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±       |             | 276  |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                       | [0..1] |         | C5, C8      | 276  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                    | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>                                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 279  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 281  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 281  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 284  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.1 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C16 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 12.4.4.1.5.2 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "[SystemPartyIdentification8](#)" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.3 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.4 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Status and status reason of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ProcessingStatus71Choice" on page 450 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 450  |
| Or  | Pending <Pdg>                     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 450  |
| Or  | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 451  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 451  |
| Or  | Denied <Dnd>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 452  |
| Or  | Completed <Cmpltd>                | [1..1] | ±    | C5          | 452  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 452  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.5 RequestReference <ReqRef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the modification request.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **12.4.4.1.5.6 StatusDate <StsDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the status was assigned.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 493

#### **12.4.4.1.5.7 RequestDetails <ReqDtls>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Details of the request providing the changes and references of the instruction for which the modification is requested.

*Impacted by:* C18 "ModificationRequestPresenceRule", C19 "OtherProcessingRule"

**RequestDetails <ReqDtls>** contains the following **RequestDetails22** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 271  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 272  |
|     | <b>Linkage</b> <Lkg>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>OtherProcessing</b> <OthrPrcg>   | [0..*] | ±         |             | 272  |
|     | <b>PartialSettlementIndicator</b> <PrtlSttlmInd>                            | [0..1] | Indicator |             | 272  |
|     | <b>ClearingChannel</b> <ClrChanl>   | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 273  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>   | [0..*] |           |             | 273  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±         | C26         | 273  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±         | C24         | 274  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |           |             | 274  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><ScetiesSttlmTxId>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text      |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text      |             | 276  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text      |             | 276  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 276  |

## Constraints

- **ModificationRequestPresenceRule**

At least one modification request type element must be present.

- **OtherProcessingRule**

If OtherProcessing is used, then its usage must be pre-agreed between the sender and the receiver.

### 12.4.4.1.5.7.1 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* References of the transaction for which the intra-balance modification is requested.

**Reference <Ref>** contains the following **References14** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text |             | 271  |
|    | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 271  |
|    | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text |             | 271  |
|    | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrcrTxId>                        | [0..1] | Text |             | 271  |
|    | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text |             | 272  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.1.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.1.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.1.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.1.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.1.5 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.2 Linkage <Lkg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of linkage requested.

**Linkage <Lkg>** contains one of the following elements (see "LinkageType3Choice" on page 413 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 414  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.3 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see "PriorityNumeric4Choice" on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.4 OtherProcessing <OthrPrcg>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies another type of processing change request.

**OtherProcessing <OthrPrcg>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.5 PartialSettlementIndicator <PrtlSttlmInd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether partial settlement is allowed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 495):



- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.6 ClearingChannel <ClrChanI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing channel to be used to process the payment instruction.

*Datatype:* "ClearingChannel2Code" on page 477

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| RTGS     | RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem | Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.  |
| RTNS     | RealTimeNetSettlementSystem   | Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.    |
| MPNS     | MassPaymentNetSystem          | Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system. |
| BOOK     | BookTransfer                  | Payment through internal book transfer.                   |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7 Linkages <Lnkgs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Information regarding the linkage requested.

**Linkages <Lnkgs>** contains the following **Linkages57** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±    | C26         | 273  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±    | C24         | 274  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |      |             | 274  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 276  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 276  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±    |             | 276  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.1 ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* When the transaction is to be executed relative to a linked transaction.

*Impacted by: C26 "WithLinkageRule"*

**ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ProcessingPosition7Choice" on page 412 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr.<br>No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|----------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |                | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |                | 413  |

#### Constraints

- **WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.2 MessageNumber <MsgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Message type number/message identifier of the message referenced in the linkage sequence.

*Impacted by: C24 "ShortLongNumberRule"*

**MessageNumber <MsgNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "DocumentNumber5Choice" on page 399 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr.<br>No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|----------------|------|
| {Or | ShortNumber <ShrtNb>        | [1..1] | Text |                | 399  |
| Or  | LongNumber <LngNb>          | [1..1] | Text |                | 399  |
| Or} | ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb> | [1..1] | ±    |                | 399  |

#### Constraints

- **ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.3 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference to the linked transaction.

**Reference <Ref>** contains one of the following **References34Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 275  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 276  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 276  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.3.1 SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification <SctiesSttlmTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a securities settlement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.3.2 IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-position movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.3.3 IntraBalanceMovementIdentification <IntraBalMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-balance movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.3.4 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.3.5 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.3.6 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.3.7 OtherTransactionIdentification <OthrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction that cannot be identified using a standard reference element present in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.1.5.7.7.4 ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party responsible for generating the reference.

**ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "PartyIdentification127Choice" on page 419 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 419  |
| Or} | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 420  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8 UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies additional details of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C5 "AdditionalDetailsRule", C8 "BalanceFromToRule"

**UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>** contains the following **IntraBalance5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 278  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 279  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 281  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 281  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                      | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrccgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 284  |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

- **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.1 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.2 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is to be moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 278  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 279  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 279  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 280  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 279  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 279  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 279  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 280  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 280  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 280  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.3.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |



#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 281  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 281  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 281  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdown&gt;</b>   | [0..*] |         |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 282  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 283  |

##### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 281  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 281  |

##### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 282  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 282  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 283  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 283  |

##### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.4.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.5 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.6 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see "PriorityNumeric4Choice" on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 12.4.4.1.5.8.7 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.2 OperationalError <OprlErr>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Operational error resulting from a rejection.

**OperationalError <OprlErr>** contains the following **ErrorHandling5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Error &lt;Err&gt;</b>         | [1..1] |         |             | 284  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 284  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 284  |
|     | <b>Description &lt;Desc&gt;</b>  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 285  |

##### 12.4.4.2.1 Error <Err>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in coded or proprietary form.

**Error <Err>** contains one of the following **ErrorHandling3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 284  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 284  |

##### 12.4.4.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalSystemErrorHandling1Code" on page 481

##### 12.4.4.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in free format.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 12.4.4.2.2 Description <Desc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in free format.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 496

### 12.4.5 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C25 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 13 camt.082.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementCancellationQueryV02

## 13.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationQuery message is sent from an account owner/requestor to a settlement infrastructure to query for the status of intra-balance movement cancellation instruction(s) based on a set of search criteria or business attributes.

The message may also be used to:

- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationQueryV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

### A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).

### B. QueryDefinition

Defines the intra-balance movement cancellation query criteria.

### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 13.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>         | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntCxlQry> | [1..1] |          |             |      |
|     | Identification <Id>                           | [0..1] |          |             | 288  |
|     | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 289  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>                    | [0..1] | ±        |             | 289  |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>                      | [0..1] | CodeSet  |             | 289  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 290  |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>                    | [0..1] | ±        |             | 290  |
|     | QueryDefinition <QryDef>                      | [1..1] |          |             | 290  |
|     | QueryType <QryTp>                             | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 291  |
|     | SearchCriteria <SchCrit>                      | [1..1] |          |             | 292  |
|     | CancellationRequestIdentification <CxlReqId>  | [0..*] | Text     |             | 293  |
|     | ProcessingStatus <PrpgSts>                    | [0..*] |          |             | 293  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                     | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 294  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                           | [1..1] | ±        |             | 294  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>                         | [0..*] |          |             | 294  |
| {Or | Equal <EQ>                                    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 295  |
| Or  | ContainText <CTTtxt>                          | [1..1] | Text     |             | 295  |
| Or} | NotContainText <NCTTtxt>                      | [1..1] | Text     |             | 295  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                | [0..*] | ±        |             | 295  |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>             | [0..1] | ±        |             | 295  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                  | [0..*] | ±        |             | 296  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>                    | [0..1] |          |             | 296  |
| {Or | Date <Dt>                                     | [1..1] |          |             | 297  |
| {Or | FromDate <FrDt>                               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 297  |
| Or  | ToDate <ToDt>                                 | [1..1] | Date     |             | 297  |
| Or  | FromDate <FrToDt>                             | [1..1] | ±        |             | 298  |
| Or  | EqualDate <EQDt>                              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 298  |
| Or} | NotEqualDate <NEQDt>                          | [1..1] | Date     |             | 298  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>                               | [1..1] |          |             | 298  |
| {Or | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>                         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>             | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>         | [1..1] | ±        |             | 299  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>          | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData> | [0..*] | ±        | C5          | 299  |

## 13.3 Constraints

### C1 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C2 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C3 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C4 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### C5 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 13.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 13.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account owner (or the instructing party acting on its behalf).



**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 289  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 289  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 289  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 290  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 290  |

### 13.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 13.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

### 13.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 13.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 13.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

### 13.4.2 QueryDefinition <QryDef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the intra-balance movement cancellation query criteria.

**QueryDefinition <QryDef>** contains the following **IntraBalanceQueryDefinition10** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                             | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>QueryType</b> <QryTp>                            | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 291  |
|     | <b>SearchCriteria</b> <SchCrit>                     | [1..1] |          |             | 292  |
|     | <b>CancellationRequestIdentification</b> <CxlReqId> | [0..*] | Text     |             | 293  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>                   | [0..*] |          |             | 293  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>                                    | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 294  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>                          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 294  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>                        | [0..*] |          |             | 294  |
| {Or | <b>Equal</b> <EQ>                                   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 295  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText</b> <CTTtxt>                         | [1..1] | Text     |             | 295  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText</b> <NCTTtxt>                     | [1..1] | Text     |             | 295  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>               | [0..*] | ±        |             | 295  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>            | [0..1] | ±        |             | 295  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>                 | [0..*] | ±        |             | 296  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>                   | [0..1] |          |             | 296  |
| {Or | <b>Date</b> <Dt>                                    | [1..1] |          |             | 297  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate</b> <FrDt>                              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 297  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate</b> <ToDt>                                | [1..1] | Date     |             | 297  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDate</b> <FrToDt>                          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate</b> <EQDt>                             | [1..1] | Date     |             | 298  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate</b> <NEQDt>                         | [1..1] | Date     |             | 298  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime</b> <DtTm>                              | [1..1] |          |             | 298  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>                        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>                          | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>                    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 299  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>                       | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm>                   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |

### 13.4.2.1 QueryType <QryTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the type of query.

*Datatype:* "MovementResponseType1Code" on page 485

| CodeName | Name   | Definition  |
|----------|--------|---|
| FULL     | Full   | Response will include full details on the movements reported.                         |
| STTS     | Status | Response will include limited details including the status on the movements reported. |

#### 13.4.2.2 SearchCriteria <SchCrit>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the criteria to extract the intra-balance movement instruction information.

**SearchCriteria <SchCrit>** contains the following **IntraBalanceQueryCriteria10** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                                   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CancellationRequestIdentification &lt;CxlReqId&gt;</b> | [0..*] | Text     |             | 293  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus &lt;PrcgSts&gt;</b>                   | [0..*] |          |             | 293  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                                    | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 294  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>                          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 294  |
|     | <b>CashAccount &lt;CshAcct&gt;</b>                        | [0..*] |          |             | 294  |
| {Or | <b>Equal &lt;EQ&gt;</b>                                   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 295  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText &lt;CTTtxt&gt;</b>                         | [1..1] | Text     |             | 295  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText &lt;NCTTtxt&gt;</b>                     | [1..1] | Text     |             | 295  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner &lt;CshAcctOwnr&gt;</b>               | [0..*] | ±        |             | 295  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer &lt;CshAcctSvcr&gt;</b>            | [0..1] | ±        |             | 295  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b>                 | [0..*] | ±        |             | 296  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>                   | [0..1] |          |             | 296  |
| {Or | <b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>                                    | [1..1] |          |             | 297  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>                              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 297  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>                                | [1..1] | Date     |             | 297  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>                            | [1..1] | ±        |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>                             | [1..1] | Date     |             | 298  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b>                         | [1..1] | Date     |             | 298  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime &lt;DtTm&gt;</b>                              | [1..1] |          |             | 298  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime &lt;FrDtTm&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime &lt;ToDtTm&gt;</b>                          | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime &lt;FrToDtTm&gt;</b>                    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 299  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime &lt;EQDtTm&gt;</b>                       | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime &lt;NEQDtTm&gt;</b>                   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |

#### 13.4.2.2.1 CancellationRequestIdentification <CxlReqId>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 13.4.2.2.2 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

**Definition:** Provides the status of settlement of a transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following **CancellationProcessingStatus9Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 294  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 294  |

#### 13.4.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

**Presence:** [1..1]

**Definition:** Provides the status of a cancellation request.

**Datatype:** "CancellationProcessingStatus3Code" on page 476

| CodeName | Name                  | Definition  |
|----------|-----------------------|---|
| CANP     | PendingCancellation   | Cancellation is pending. It is not known at this time whether cancellation can be affected. |
| REJT     | Rejected              | Cancellation has been rejected for further processing.                                      |
| REPR     | InRepair              | Cancellation request is in repair.  |
| PACK     | Accepted              | Cancellation request has been acknowledged for further processing by the account servicer.  |
| DEND     | Denied                | Cancellation will not be executed.  |
| CAND     | CancellationCompleted | Cancellation has been completed.  |

#### 13.4.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

**Presence:** [1..1]

**Definition:** Provides the status of a cancellation request.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 13.4.2.2.3 CashAccount <CshAcct>

**Presence:** [0..\*]

**Definition:** Account in which cash is maintained.

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains one of the following  
**AccountIdentificationSearchCriteria2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>               | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Equal &lt;EQ&gt;</b>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 295  |
| Or  | <b>ContainText &lt;CTTtxt&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 295  |
| Or} | <b>NotContainText &lt;NCTTtxt&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Text |             | 295  |

#### 13.4.2.2.3.1 Equal <EQ>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on exact identification of the account(s).

**Equal <EQ>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 391 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>IBAN &lt;IBAN&gt;</b>  | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C9          | 391  |
| Or} | <b>Other &lt;Othr&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 392  |

#### 13.4.2.2.3.2 ContainText <CTTtxt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on partial identification of the account(s).

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

#### 13.4.2.2.3.3 NotContainText <NCTTtxt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Search for one or more accounts based on a pattern that cannot be contained in the account identification.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

#### 13.4.2.2.4 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "[SystemPartyIdentification8](#)" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                                    | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | <b>ResponsiblePartyIdentification &lt;RspnsblPtyId&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 13.4.2.2.5 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 13.4.2.2.6 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 13.4.2.2.7 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the creation date/time of the intra-balance movement.



**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following **DateAndDateTimeSearch5Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>                  | [1..1] |          |             | 297  |
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>            | [1..1] | Date     |             | 297  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | Date     |             | 297  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | ±        |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | Date     |             | 298  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b>       | [1..1] | Date     |             | 298  |
| Or} | <b>DateTime &lt;DtTm&gt;</b>            | [1..1] |          |             | 298  |
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime &lt;FrDtTm&gt;</b>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime &lt;ToDtTm&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>FromDateTime &lt;FrToDtTm&gt;</b>    | [1..1] | ±        |             | 299  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime &lt;EQDtTm&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime &lt;NEQDtTm&gt;</b> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |

#### 13.4.2.2.7.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following **DatePeriodSearch1Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDate &lt;FrDt&gt;</b>      | [1..1] | Date |             | 297  |
| Or  | <b>ToDate &lt;ToDt&gt;</b>        | [1..1] | Date |             | 297  |
| Or  | <b>FromDate &lt;FrToDt&gt;</b>    | [1..1] | ±    |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDate &lt;EQDt&gt;</b>     | [1..1] | Date |             | 298  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDate &lt;NEQDt&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Date |             | 298  |

##### 13.4.2.2.7.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

##### 13.4.2.2.7.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 13.4.2.2.7.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 396 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |

#### 13.4.2.2.7.1.4 EqualDate <EQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 13.4.2.2.7.1.5 NotEqualDate <NEQDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 13.4.2.2.7.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

**DateTime <DtTm>** contains one of the following **DateTimeSearch2Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>FromDateTime</b> <FrDtTm>      | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>ToDateTime</b> <ToDtTm>        | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 298  |
| Or  | <b>FromToDateTime</b> <FrToDtTm>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 299  |
| Or  | <b>EqualDateTime</b> <EQDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |
| Or} | <b>NotEqualDateTime</b> <NEQDtTm> | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 299  |

#### 13.4.2.2.7.2.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 13.4.2.2.7.2.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 13.4.2.2.7.2.3 FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start date and an end date.

**FromToDateTime <FrToDtTm>** contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 398 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |
|    | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 13.4.2.2.7.2.4 EqualDateTime <EQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to match.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime"](#) on page 493

#### 13.4.2.2.7.2.5 NotEqualDateTime <NEQDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date to be excluded from the search.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime"](#) on page 493

### 13.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C5 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 14 camt.083.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementCancellationReportV0 2

## 14.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationReport message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to provide full details or current status values of the intra-balance movement cancellation request(s), as defined within the query.

The message may also be used to:

- re-send a message previously sent (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementCancellationReportV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 5 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

B. Pagination

Pagination of the message.

C. ReportGeneralDetails

General characteristics related to the report information.

D. ReportOrError

Provides information on report or error resulting from the originating query message.

E. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 14.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>         | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No.        | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|--------------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntCxlRpt> | [1..1] |           | C3, C4, C19, C20   |      |
|     | Identification <Id>                           | [0..1] |           |                    | 305  |
|     | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | Text      |                    | 306  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>                    | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 306  |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>                      | [0..1] | CodeSet   |                    | 306  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                  | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 306  |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>                    | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 307  |
|     | Pagination <Pgntn>                            | [1..1] | ±         |                    | 307  |
|     | ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnlDtls>             | [1..1] |           | C21                | 307  |
|     | ReportNumber <RptNb>                          | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 308  |
|     | QueryReference <QryRef>                       | [0..1] | Text      |                    | 308  |
|     | ReportIdentification <RptId>                  | [0..1] | Text      |                    | 308  |
|     | ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>                      | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 308  |
|     | ReportPeriod <RptPrd>                         | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 309  |
|     | QueryType <QryTp>                             | [0..1] | CodeSet   |                    | 309  |
|     | Frequency <Frqcy>                             | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 309  |
|     | UpdateType <UpdTp>                            | [1..1] | ±         |                    | 309  |
|     | ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>                 | [1..1] | Indicator |                    | 310  |
|     | ReportOrError <RptOrErr>                      | [0..1] |           |                    | 310  |
| {Or | Cancellations <Cxls>                          | [1..*] |           | C10, C11, C12, C18 | 312  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>                         | [0..1] | ±         | C17, C16           | 314  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 315  |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>             | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 315  |
|     | ProcessingStatus <PrpgSts>                    | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 316  |
|     | Cancellation <Cxl>                            | [1..*] |           |                    | 316  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>                         | [0..1] | ±         | C17, C16           | 318  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                | [0..1] | ±         |                    | 318  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                    | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                 | [0..1] | ±        |             | 319  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 319  |
|     | <b>RequestReference</b> <ReqRef>   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 320  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>  | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 320  |
|     | <b>TransactionIdentification</b> <Txld>                                  | [0..1] |          |             | 320  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctOwnrTxld>              | [0..1] | Text     |             | 320  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxld>           | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b> <MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxld>                    | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>                                       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                          | [0..1] |          | C5, C8      | 321  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                       | [1..1] | ±        |             | 323  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 323  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |          |             | 323  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |          |             | 323  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 324  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 324  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                     | [0..*] |          |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |          |             | 326  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |          |             | 326  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 326  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 326  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                     | [0..*] |          |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 328  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 328  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                 | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 329  |
| Or} | <b>OperationalError</b> <OpriErr>                                     | [1..*] |         |             | 329  |
|     | <b>Error</b> <Err>  | [1..1] |         |             | 329  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 329  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 329  |
|     | <b>Description</b> <Desc>   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 330  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                | [0..*] | ±       | C22         | 330  |

## 14.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 ActivityIndicatorNoRule

If ReportGeneralDetails/ActivityIndicator is equal to No (false or 0) then ReportOrError must be absent.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C4 ActivityIndicatorYesRule

If ReportGeneralDetails/ActivityIndicator is equal to Yes (true or 1) then ReportOrError must be present.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C5 AdditionalDetailsRule

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

### C6 AdditionalReasonInformationRule

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

**C7 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C8 BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

**C9 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C10 CashAccountOwnerRule**

CashAccountOwner must be present or Cancellation(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

**C11 CashAccountRule**

CashAccount must be present or Cancellation(\*)/CashAccount must be present, but not both.

**C12 CashAccountServicerRule**

CashAccountServicer must be present or Cancellation(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

**C13 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C14 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C15 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C16 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C17 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C18 ProcessingStatusRule**

ProcessingStatus must be present or Cancellation(\*)/ProcessingStatus must be present, but not both.



#### C19 QueryTypeFullRule

If ReportGeneralDetails/QueryType is equal to Full, then ReportOrError/Cancellations(\*)/Cancellation/TransactionIdentification and ReportOrError/Cancellations(\*)/Cancellation/UnderlyingIntraBalance must be present.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

#### C20 QueryTypeStatusRule

If ReportGeneralDetails/QueryType is equal to Status, then ReportOrError/Cancellations(\*)/Cancellation/TransactionIdentification and ReportOrError/Cancellations(\*)/Cancellation/UnderlyingIntraBalance must be absent.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

#### C21 ReportNumberRule

If Long number (Exact5NumericTest) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportNumber must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different ReportNumbers. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportNumber 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

#### C22 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 14.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 14.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 306  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 306  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDpct&gt;</b>      | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 306  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 306  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 307  |

#### 14.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 14.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 14.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 14.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 14.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 14.4.2 Pagination <Pgntn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Pagination of the message.

**Pagination <Pgntn>** contains the following elements (see "[Pagination1](#)" on page 412 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>       | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | PageNumber <PgNb>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 412  |
|    | LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 412  |

#### 14.4.3 ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* General characteristics related to the report information.

*Impacted by:* C21 "ReportNumberRule"

**ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>** contains the following **IntraBalanceReport5** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>              | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>ReportNumber</b> <RptNb>          | [0..1] | ±         |             | 308  |
|    | <b>QueryReference</b> <QryRef>       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 308  |
|    | <b>ReportIdentification</b> <RptId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 308  |
|    | <b>ReportDateTime</b> <RptDtTm>      | [0..1] | ±         |             | 308  |
|    | <b>ReportPeriod</b> <RptPrd>         | [0..1] | ±         |             | 309  |
|    | <b>QueryType</b> <QryTp>             | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 309  |
|    | <b>Frequency</b> <Frqcy>             | [0..1] | ±         |             | 309  |
|    | <b>UpdateType</b> <UpdTp>            | [1..1] | ±         |             | 309  |
|    | <b>ActivityIndicator</b> <ActvtyInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 310  |

## Constraints

- **ReportNumberRule**

If Long number (Exact5NumericTest) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportNumber must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different ReportNumbers. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportNumber 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

### 14.4.3.1 ReportNumber <RptNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the report.

**ReportNumber <RptNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "Number3Choice" on page 410 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Short <Shrt>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |
| Or} | Long <Lng>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |

### 14.4.3.2 QueryReference <QryRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the query message sent to request this statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 14.4.3.3 ReportIdentification <RptId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference common to all pages of a statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 14.4.3.4 ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when the report was created.

**ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 14.4.3.5 ReportPeriod <RptPrd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Period for the statement.

**ReportPeriod <RptPrd>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Period7Choice"](#) on page 396 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | FromDateDateTimeToDateTime <FrDtTmToDtTm> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |
| Or} | FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |

#### 14.4.3.6 QueryType <QryTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Defines the type of query.

*Datatype:* ["MovementResponseType1Code"](#) on page 485

| CodeName | Name   | Definition  |
|----------|--------|---|
| FULL     | Full   | Response will include full details on the movements reported.                         |
| STTS     | Status | Response will include limited details including the status on the movements reported. |

#### 14.4.3.7 Frequency <Frqcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Frequency of the statement.

**Frequency <Frqcy>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Frequency22Choice"](#) on page 407 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 407  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 408  |

#### 14.4.3.8 UpdateType <UpdTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the statement is complete or contains changes only.

**UpdateType <UpdTp>** contains one of the following elements (see ["UpdateType15Choice"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 415  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 415  |

#### 14.4.3.9 ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether there is activity or information update reported in the statement.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[YesNoIndicator](#)" on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

#### 14.4.4 ReportOrError <RptOrErr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on report or error resulting from the originating query message.

**ReportOrError <RptOrErr>** contains one of the following **IntraBalanceOrOperationalError10Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No.                 | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-----------------------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Cancellations</b> <Cxl/s>  | [1..*] |          | C10,<br>C11,<br>C12,<br>C18 | 312  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±        | C17,<br>C16                 | 314  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±        |                             | 315  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±        |                             | 315  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>   | [0..1] | ±        |                             | 316  |
|     | <b>Cancellation</b> <Cxl>   | [1..*] |          |                             | 316  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±        | C17,<br>C16                 | 318  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                       | [0..1] | ±        |                             | 318  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                    | [0..1] | ±        |                             | 319  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>   | [0..1] | ±        |                             | 319  |
|     | <b>RequestReference</b> <ReqRef>  | [1..1] | Text     |                             | 320  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |                             | 320  |
|     | <b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>                                     | [0..1] |          |                             | 320  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text     |                             | 320  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text     |                             | 321  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text     |                             | 321  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text     |                             | 321  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text     |                             | 321  |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                             | [0..1] |          | C5, C8                      | 321  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±        |                             | 323  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>   | [1..1] | ±        |                             | 323  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |          |                             | 323  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |                             | 323  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |                             | 324  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±        |                             | 324  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |          |                             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |                             | 324  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 326  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 326  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 326  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 326  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                  | [0..*] |         |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrpgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 329  |
| Or} | <b>OperationalError</b> <OpriErr>                                     | [1..*] |         |             | 329  |
|     | <b>Error</b> <Err>  | [1..1] |         |             | 329  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 329  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | Text    |             | 329  |
|     | <b>Description</b> <Desc>   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 330  |

#### 14.4.4.1 Cancellations <CxIs>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Further details of the intrabalance cancellation transactions.

*Impacted by:* C10 "CashAccountOwnerRule", C11 "CashAccountRule", C12 "CashAccountServicerRule", C18 "ProcessingStatusRule"



**Cancellations <Cxl>** contains the following **IntraBalanceCancellation7** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±        | C17, C16    | 314  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 315  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                | [0..1] | ±        |             | 315  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>                                       | [0..1] | ±        |             | 316  |
|     | <b>Cancellation</b> <Cxl>   | [1..*] |          |             | 316  |
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>  | [0..1] | ±        | C17, C16    | 318  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 318  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                | [0..1] | ±        |             | 319  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>                                       | [0..1] | ±        |             | 319  |
|     | <b>RequestReference</b> <ReqRef>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 320  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 320  |
|     | <b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>                                 | [0..1] |          |             | 320  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctOwnrTxId>             | [0..1] | Text     |             | 320  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxId>          | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b> <MktInfstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                   | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>                                      | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                         | [0..1] |          | C5, C8      | 321  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                      | [1..1] | ±        |             | 323  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 323  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |          |             | 323  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 323  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 324  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 324  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                    | [0..*] |          |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                 | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 326  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 326  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 326  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 326  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrpgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 329  |

#### Constraints

- **CashAccountOwnerRule**

CashAccountOwner must be present or Cancellation(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

- **CashAccountRule**

CashAccount must be present or Cancellation(\*)/CashAccount must be present, but not both.

- **CashAccountServicerRule**

CashAccountServicer must be present or Cancellation(\*)/AccountOwner must be present, but not both.

- **ProcessingStatusRule**

ProcessingStatus must be present or Cancellation(\*)/ProcessingStatus must be present, but not both.

#### 14.4.4.1.1 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C16 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
 /Identification Must be present  
 Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 14.4.4.1.2 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "[SystemPartyIdentification8](#)" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 14.4.4.1.3 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 14.4.4.1.4 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Status and status reason of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ProcessingStatus69Choice" on page 452 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | PendingCancellation <PdgCxl>      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or  | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or  | Denied <Dnd>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or} | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 455  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5 Cancellation <Cxl>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Further details of the individual intrabalance cancellation transaction.

**Cancellation <Cxl>** contains the following **IntraBalanceCancellation8** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashAccount</b> <CshAcct>   | [0..1] | ±        | C17, C16    | 318  |
|     | <b>CashAccountOwner</b> <CshAcctOwnr>                                    | [0..1] | ±        |             | 318  |
|     | <b>CashAccountServicer</b> <CshAcctSvcr>                                 | [0..1] | ±        |             | 319  |
|     | <b>ProcessingStatus</b> <PrpgSts>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 319  |
|     | <b>RequestReference</b> <ReqRef>   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 320  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>  | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 320  |
|     | <b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>                                  | [0..1] |          |             | 320  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text     |             | 320  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b> <MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                    | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>                                       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 321  |
|     | <b>UnderlyingIntraBalance</b> <UndrlygIntraBal>                          | [0..1] |          | C5, C8      | 321  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                       | [1..1] | ±        |             | 323  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 323  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |          |             | 323  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |          |             | 323  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 324  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 324  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                     | [0..*] |          |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 325  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |          |             | 326  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |          |             | 326  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 326  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 326  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>                                     | [0..*] |          |             | 327  |

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±    |             | 327  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±    |             | 327  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>                                       | [0..1] | ±    |             | 328  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                           | [0..1] | ±    |             | 328  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                 | [0..1] | ±    |             | 328  |
|    | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±    |             | 328  |
|    | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text |             | 329  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.1 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* [C17 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C16 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

#### 14.4.4.1.5.2 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see  
"SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.3 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.4 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Status and status reason of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"ProcessingStatus69Choice" on page 452 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | PendingCancellation <PdgCxl>      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or  | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or  | Denied <Dnd>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or} | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 455  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.5 RequestReference <ReqRef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the cancellation request.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 14.4.4.1.5.6 StatusDate <StsDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the status was assigned.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 493

#### 14.4.4.1.5.7 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* References of the transaction for which the intra-balance modification is requested.

**TransactionIdentification <TxId>** contains the following **References14** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text |             | 320  |
|    | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 321  |
|    | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text |             | 321  |
|    | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text |             | 321  |
|    | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text |             | 321  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.7.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).



*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **14.4.4.1.5.7.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **14.4.4.1.5.7.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **14.4.4.1.5.7.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **14.4.4.1.5.7.5 PoolIdentification <PoolId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **14.4.4.1.5.8 UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies additional details of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C5 "AdditionalDetailsRule", C8 "BalanceFromToRule"

**UnderlyingIntraBalance <UndrlygIntraBal>** contains the following **IntraBalance5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                    | [1..1] | ±       |             | 323  |
|     | <b>SettlementDate</b> <SttlmDt>                                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 323  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 323  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 323  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 324  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 324  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 326  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 326  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 326  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 326  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrpgAddtlDtls> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 329  |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalDetailsRule**

Unless bilaterally agreed between the sender and the receiver, if InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails is present, then it must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field.

- **BalanceFromToRule**

The cash balance type of BalanceFrom must be different from the cash balance type of BalanceTo.

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.1 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of money to be settled.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Amount2Choice](#)" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.2 SettlementDate <SttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is to be moved.

**SettlementDate <SttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 323  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 324  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 324  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 324  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 325  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 324  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 324  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 324  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 325  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 325  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 325  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>              | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>     | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.3.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 326  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 326  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 326  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdown&gt;</b>   | [0..*] |         |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 327  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 328  |

##### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 326  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 326  |

##### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 327  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 327  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 328  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 328  |

##### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.4.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.5 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.6 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.



**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see "PriorityNumeric4Choice" on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 14.4.4.1.5.8.7 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 497

#### 14.4.4.2 OperationalError <OprlErr>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Operational error resulting from a rejection.

**OperationalError <OprlErr>** contains the following **ErrorHandling5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Error &lt;Err&gt;</b>         | [1..1] |         |             | 329  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 329  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 329  |
|     | <b>Description &lt;Desc&gt;</b>  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 330  |

##### 14.4.4.2.1 Error <Err>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in coded or proprietary form.

**Error <Err>** contains one of the following **ErrorHandling3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 329  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | Text    |             | 329  |

##### 14.4.4.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalSystemErrorHandling1Code" on page 481

##### 14.4.4.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in free format.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 14.4.4.2.2 Description <Desc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of the error, in free format.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 496

### 14.4.5 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C22 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 15 camt.084.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementPostingReportV02

## 15.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

This IntraBalanceMovementPostingReport message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/requestor to report the intra-balance movement instructions, previously sent by the account owner, that have a settled status.

The message may also be used to:

- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementPostingReportV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 7 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

B. Pagination

Pagination of the message.

C. ReportGeneralDetails

General characteristics related to the report information.

D. CashAccount

Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

E. CashAccountOwner

Party that owns the account.

F. CashAccountServicer

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

G. SubBalance

Identifies the transactions.

## 15.2 Structure

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|     | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntPstngRpt> | [1..1] |           | C3, C4      |      |
|     | Identification <Id>                             | [0..1] |           |             | 336  |
|     | Identification <Id>                             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 336  |
|     | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>                      | [0..1] | ±         |             | 336  |
|     | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>                        | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 336  |
|     | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                    | [0..1] | ±         |             | 337  |
|     | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>                      | [0..1] | ±         |             | 337  |
|     | Pagination <Pgntn>                              | [1..1] | ±         |             | 337  |
|     | ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnlDtls>               | [1..1] |           | C13         | 338  |
|     | ReportNumber <RptNb>                            | [0..1] | ±         |             | 338  |
|     | QueryReference <QryRef>                         | [0..1] | Text      |             | 338  |
|     | ReportIdentification <RptId>                    | [0..1] | Text      |             | 339  |
|     | ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>                        | [0..1] | ±         |             | 339  |
|     | ReportPeriod <RptPrd>                           | [0..1] | ±         |             | 339  |
|     | Frequency <Frqcy>                               | [0..1] | ±         |             | 339  |
|     | UpdateType <UpdTp>                              | [1..1] | ±         |             | 339  |
|     | ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>                   | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 340  |
|     | CashAccount <CshAcct>                           | [1..1] | ±         | C11,<br>C10 | 340  |
|     | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 341  |
|     | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>               | [0..1] | ±         |             | 341  |
|     | SubBalance <SubBal>                             | [0..*] |           |             | 341  |
|     | BalanceFrom <BalFr>                             | [1..1] |           |             | 343  |
|     | Type <Tp>                                       | [1..1] |           |             | 344  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                       | [1..1] | CodeSet   |             | 344  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                             | [1..1] | ±         |             | 344  |
|     | QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdown>                  | [0..*] |           |             | 345  |
|     | LotNumber <LotNb>                               | [0..1] | ±         |             | 345  |
|     | LotAmount <LotAmt>                              | [0..1] | ±         |             | 345  |
|     | LotQuantity <LotQty>                            | [0..1] | ±         |             | 345  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                       | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±        |             | 346  |
|     | <b>Movement</b> <Mvmnt>   | [1..*] |          | C12         | 346  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctOwnrTxld>                 | [1..1] | Text     |             | 348  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b> <AcctSvcrTxld>              | [0..1] | Text     |             | 348  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text     |             | 348  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxld>                       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 348  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text     |             | 349  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [0..1] | Text     |             | 349  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |          |             | 349  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 349  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 350  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 350  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |          |             | 350  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 350  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 351  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 351  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±        |             | 351  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 351  |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 352  |
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttldAmt>                             | [0..1] | ±        |             | 352  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttldDt>                                | [1..1] | ±        |             | 352  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 352  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 353  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnks>  | [0..*] |          |             | 353  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±        | C16         | 353  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±        | C14         | 354  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |          |             | 354  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttldTxld>    | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b> <IntraPosMvmntId>                | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b> <IntraBalMvmntId>                 | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                       | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 356  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 356  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 357  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrccAddtlDtls>          | [0..1] | Text     |             | 357  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±        | C15         | 357  |

## 15.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 ActivityIndicatorNoRule

If ActivityIndicator is equal to No (false or 0) then SubBalances must be absent.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C4 ActivityIndicatorYesRule

If ActivityIndicator is equal to Yes (true or 1) then SubBalances must be present.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C5 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C6 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C7 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C8 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C9 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C10 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C11 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C12 NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule**

If no reference is available for the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification, for example, the transaction was sent by fax, then the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification must be NONREF.

**C13 ReportNumberRule**

If Long number (Exact5NumericTest) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportNumber must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different ReportNumbers. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportNumber 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

**C14 ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

**C15 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C16 WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can

not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

## 15.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 15.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 336  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 336  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 336  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 337  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 337  |

#### 15.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 15.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478



| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

#### 15.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 15.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification136](#)" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

### 15.4.2 Pagination <Pgntn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Pagination of the message.

**Pagination <Pgntn>** contains the following elements (see "[Pagination1](#)" on page 412 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>       | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | PageNumber <PgNb>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 412  |
|    | LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 412  |

## 15.4.3 ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* General characteristics related to the report information.

*Impacted by:* C13 "ReportNumberRule"

**ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>** contains the following **IntraBalanceReport6** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>              | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>ReportNumber</b> <RptNb>          | [0..1] | ±         |             | 338  |
|    | <b>QueryReference</b> <QryRef>       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 338  |
|    | <b>ReportIdentification</b> <RptId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 339  |
|    | <b>ReportDateTime</b> <RptDtTm>      | [0..1] | ±         |             | 339  |
|    | <b>ReportPeriod</b> <RptPrd>         | [0..1] | ±         |             | 339  |
|    | <b>Frequency</b> <Frqcy>             | [0..1] | ±         |             | 339  |
|    | <b>UpdateType</b> <UpdTp>            | [1..1] | ±         |             | 339  |
|    | <b>ActivityIndicator</b> <ActvtyInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 340  |

### Constraints

- **ReportNumberRule**

If Long number (Exact5NumericTest) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportNumber must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different ReportNumbers. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportNumber 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

### 15.4.3.1 ReportNumber <RptNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the report.

**ReportNumber <RptNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "Number3Choice" on page 410 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Short <Shrt>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |
| Or} | Long <Lng>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |

### 15.4.3.2 QueryReference <QryRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the query message sent to request this statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 15.4.3.3 ReportIdentification <RptId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference common to all pages of a statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 15.4.3.4 ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when the report was created.

**ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

### 15.4.3.5 ReportPeriod <RptPrd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Period for the statement.

**ReportPeriod <RptPrd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Period7Choice](#)" on page 396 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>               | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | FromDateTimeToDateTime <FrDtTmToDtTm> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |
| Or} | FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>             | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |

### 15.4.3.6 Frequency <Frqcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Frequency of the statement.

**Frequency <Frqcy>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Frequency22Choice](#)" on page 407 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 407  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 408  |

### 15.4.3.7 UpdateType <UpdTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the statement is complete or contains changes only.

**UpdateType** <UpdTp> contains one of the following elements (see "UpdateType15Choice" on page 415 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 415  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 415  |

#### 15.4.3.8 ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether there is activity or information update reported in the statement.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

### 15.4.4 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C11 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C10 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CashAccount** <CshAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True

/Identification Must be present

Or /Proxy Must be present

## 15.4.5 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 15.4.6 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

## 15.4.7 SubBalance <SubBal>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Identifies the transactions.

**SubBalance <SubBal>** contains the following **IntraBalancePosting5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 343  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 344  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 344  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 344  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |         |             | 345  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 345  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 345  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 345  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 346  |
|     | <b>Movement</b> <Mvmnt>   | [1..*] |         | C12         | 346  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 348  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 348  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 348  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 348  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 349  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 349  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 349  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 349  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 350  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 350  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |         |             | 350  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 350  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 351  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 351  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 351  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>   | [1..1] | ±       |             | 351  |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt>                           | [0..1] | ±       |             | 352  |
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttldAmt>                             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 352  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttldDt>                                | [1..1] | ±       |             | 352  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 352  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalld>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 353  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnks>  | [0..*] |          |             | 353  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±        | C16         | 353  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±        | C14         | 354  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |          |             | 354  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesStlmTxld>     | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntld>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntld>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxld>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <Poolld>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 356  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxld>                            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 356  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 357  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 357  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±        | C15         | 357  |

#### 15.4.7.1 BalanceFrom <BalFr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 344  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 344  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 344  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdown&gt;</b>   | [0..*] |         |             | 345  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 345  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 345  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 345  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 346  |

#### 15.4.7.1.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 344  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 344  |

##### 15.4.7.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 15.4.7.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |



### 15.4.7.1.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 345  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 345  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 345  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 346  |

#### 15.4.7.1.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 15.4.7.1.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 15.4.7.1.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 15.4.7.1.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 15.4.7.2 Movement <Mvmnt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the individual intrabalance movement transaction.

*Impacted by:* C12 "NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule"

**Movement <Mvmnt>** contains the following **IntraBalancePosting6** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 348  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text     |             | 348  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text     |             | 348  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 348  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text     |             | 349  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [0..1] | Text     |             | 349  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |          |             | 349  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 349  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 350  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 350  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |          |             | 350  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 350  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 351  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 351  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±        |             | 351  |
|     | <b>SettledAmount</b> <SttldAmt>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 351  |
|     | <b>PreviouslySettledAmount</b> <PrevsllySttldAmt>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 352  |
|     | <b>RemainingSettlementAmount</b> <RmngSttldAmt>                             | [0..1] | ±        |             | 352  |
|     | <b>EffectiveSettlementDate</b> <FctvSttldDt>                                | [1..1] | ±        |             | 352  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 352  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 353  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnks>  | [0..*] |          |             | 353  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±        | C16         | 353  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±        | C14         | 354  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |          |             | 354  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttldTxId>   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 356  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 356  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 356  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 357  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 357  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±        | C15         | 357  |

#### Constraints

- **NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule**

If no reference is available for the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification, for example, the transaction was sent by fax, then the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification must be NONREF.

#### 15.4.7.2.1 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.2 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.3 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.4 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrcrTxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.5 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.6 CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by the account servicer to unambiguously identify a corporate action event.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.7 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 349  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 350  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 350  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdown&gt;</b>   | [0..*] |         |             | 350  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 350  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 351  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 351  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 351  |

##### 15.4.7.2.7.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 350  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 350  |

#### 15.4.7.2.7.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 15.4.7.2.7.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 15.4.7.2.7.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 350  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 351  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 351  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 351  |

##### 15.4.7.2.7.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 15.4.7.2.7.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 15.4.7.2.7.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 15.4.7.2.7.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 15.4.7.2.8 SettledAmount <SttldAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money effectively settled and which will be credited to/debited from the account owner's cash account. It may differ from the instructed settlement amount based on market tolerance level.

**SettledAmount <SttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "Amount2Choice" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 15.4.7.2.9 PreviouslySettledAmount <PrevsllySttldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money previously settled.

**PreviouslySettledAmount <PrevsllySttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "Amount2Choice" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 15.4.7.2.10 RemainingSettlementAmount <RmngSttldAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money remaining to be settled.

**RemainingSettlementAmount <RmngSttldAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see "Amount2Choice" on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 15.4.7.2.11 EffectiveSettlementDate <FctvSttldDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is moved.

**EffectiveSettlementDate <FctvSttldDt>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 15.4.7.2.12 StatusDate <StsDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the status was assigned.



*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 493

#### 15.4.7.2.13 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification37" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 15.4.7.2.14 Linkages <Lnkgs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Link to another transaction that must be processed after, before or at the same time.

**Linkages <Lnkgs>** contains the following **Linkages57** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±    | C16         | 353  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±    | C14         | 354  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |      |             | 354  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SctiesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 356  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 356  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±    |             | 356  |

##### 15.4.7.2.14.1 ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* When the transaction is to be executed relative to a linked transaction.

*Impacted by:* C16 "WithLinkageRule"

**ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>** contains one of the following elements (see "ProcessingPosition7Choice" on page 412 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 413  |

#### Constraints

- **WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

#### 15.4.7.2.14.2 MessageNumber <MsgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Message type number/message identifier of the message referenced in the linkage sequence.

*Impacted by:* C14 "ShortLongNumberRule"

**MessageNumber <MsgNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "DocumentNumber5Choice" on page 399 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | ShortNumber <ShrtNb>        | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or  | LongNumber <LngNb>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or} | ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 399  |

#### Constraints

- **ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### 15.4.7.2.14.3 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference to the linked transaction.

**Reference <Ref>** contains one of the following **References34Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttlmTxId>    | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 355  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text |             | 356  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text |             | 356  |

#### 15.4.7.2.14.3.1 SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification <SciesSttlmTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a securities settlement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.14.3.2 IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-position movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.14.3.3 IntraBalanceMovementIdentification <IntraBalMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-balance movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.14.3.4 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.14.3.5 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.14.3.6 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.14.3.7 OtherTransactionIdentification <OthrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction that cannot be identified using a standard reference element present in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.14.4 ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party responsible for generating the reference.

**ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "PartyIdentification127Choice" on page 419 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 419  |
| Or} | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 420  |

#### 15.4.7.2.15 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see "PriorityNumeric4Choice" on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 15.4.7.2.16 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 15.4.7.2.17 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date/time on which the trade was executed.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 493

#### 15.4.7.2.18 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 497

#### 15.4.7.2.19 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C15 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 16 camt.085.001.02 IntraBalanceMovementPendingReportV02

## 16.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

This IntraBalanceMovementPendingReport message is sent from a settlement infrastructure to an account owner/request to report the intra-balance movement instructions, previously sent by the account owner, that have a pending status.

The message may also be used to:

- re-send a message sent by the account owner to the account servicer (the sub-function of the message is "Duplicate")
- provide a third party with a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy")
- re-send to a third party a copy of a message being sent by the account owner for information (the sub-function of the message is "Copy Duplicate").

Outline

The IntraBalanceMovementPendingReportV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 7 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. Identification

Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

B. Pagination

Pagination of the message.

C. ReportGeneralDetails

General characteristics related to the report information.

D. CashAccount

Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

E. CashAccountOwner

Party that owns the account.

F. CashAccountServicer

Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

G. Movements

Further details on the intrabalance movement transactions.

## 16.2 Structure

| Or | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                             | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | Message root <Document> <IntraBalMvmntPdgRpt>                     | [1..1] |           | C3, C4      |      |
|    | Identification <Id>   | [0..1] |           |             | 363  |
|    | Identification <Id>   | [1..1] | Text      |             | 363  |
|    | CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 363  |
|    | CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>  | [0..1] | CodeSet   |             | 364  |
|    | MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>                                      | [0..1] | ±         |             | 364  |
|    | MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 364  |
|    | Pagination <Pgntn>  | [1..1] | ±         |             | 364  |
|    | ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnlDtls>                                 | [1..1] |           | C15         | 365  |
|    | ReportNumber <RptNb>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 365  |
|    | QueryReference <QryRef>   | [0..1] | Text      |             | 366  |
|    | ReportIdentification <RptId>                                      | [0..1] | Text      |             | 366  |
|    | ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>  | [0..1] | ±         |             | 366  |
|    | ReportPeriod <RptPrd>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 366  |
|    | Frequency <Frqcy>   | [0..1] | ±         |             | 366  |
|    | UpdateType <UpdTp>  | [1..1] | ±         |             | 367  |
|    | ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>                                     | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 367  |
|    | CashAccount <CshAcct>   | [1..1] | ±         | C12, C11    | 367  |
|    | CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>                                    | [0..1] | ±         |             | 368  |
|    | CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>                                 | [0..1] | ±         |             | 368  |
|    | Movements <Mvmnts>  | [0..*] |           | C17         | 369  |
|    | StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>                                       | [0..1] | ±         |             | 371  |
|    | Movement <Mvmnt>  | [1..*] |           | C13         | 372  |
|    | StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>                                       | [0..1] | ±         |             | 374  |
|    | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxld>              | [1..1] | Text      |             | 375  |
|    | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxld>           | [0..1] | Text      |             | 375  |
|    | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxld> | [0..1] | Text      |             | 375  |
|    | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxld>                    | [0..1] | Text      |             | 375  |
|    | PoolIdentification <PoolId>                                       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 375  |

| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                    | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtId>                | [0..1] | Text     |             | 375  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>   | [1..1] |          |             | 375  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |          |             | 376  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 376  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 376  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                    | [0..*] |          |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 377  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 378  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>   | [1..1] |          |             | 378  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>   | [1..1] |          |             | 378  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>   | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 379  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>   | [1..1] | ±        |             | 379  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                    | [0..*] |          |             | 379  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 379  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 380  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 380  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 380  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>                                       | [1..1] | ±        |             | 381  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>                            | [1..1] | ±        |             | 381  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>  | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 381  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                        | [0..1] | ±        |             | 381  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>  | [0..*] |          |             | 381  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>                                      | [0..1] | ±        | C19         | 382  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>   | [0..1] | ±        | C16         | 382  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>   | [1..1] |          |             | 383  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttlmTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b> <IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b> <IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>        | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |



| Or  | MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>                                       | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 384  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 385  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 385  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 385  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b> <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>          | [0..1] | Text     |             | 385  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±        | C18         | 385  |

## 16.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 ActivityIndicatorNoRule

If ReportGeneralDetails/ActivityIndicator is equal to No (false or 0) then Movements must be absent.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C4 ActivityIndicatorYesRule

If ReportGeneralDetails/ActivityIndicator is equal to Yes (true or 1) then Movements must be present.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

### C5 AdditionalReasonInformationRule

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

### C6 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C7 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C8 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C9 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C10 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C11 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C12 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C13 NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule**

If no reference is available for the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification, for example, the transaction was sent by fax, then the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification must be NONREF.

**C14 PendingToFailingRule**

A pending transaction (PEND) becomes a failing transaction (PENF) on the settlement date instructed in the message, during the end of day reporting.

**C15 ReportNumberRule**

If Long number (Exact5NumericTest) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportNumber must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different ReportNumbers. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportNumber 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

**C16 ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

**C17 StatusAndReasonRule**

StatusAndReason must be present or Movement(\*)/StatusAndReason must be present, but not both.

### C18 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### C19 WithLinkageRule

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

## 16.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 16.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the message as known by the account servicer or settlement infrastructure.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **DocumentIdentification51** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>Identification &lt;Id&gt;</b>          | [1..1] | Text    |             | 363  |
|    | <b>CreationDateTime &lt;CreDtTm&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 363  |
|    | <b>CopyDuplicate &lt;CpyDplct&gt;</b>     | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 364  |
|    | <b>MessageOriginator &lt;MsgOrgtr&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 364  |
|    | <b>MessageRecipient &lt;MsgRcpt&gt;</b>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 364  |

#### 16.4.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document (message) assigned by the sender of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the document (message) was created by the sender.

**CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

### 16.4.1.3 CopyDuplicate <CpyDplct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Datatype:* "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 478

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

### 16.4.1.4 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

### 16.4.1.5 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that is the final destination of the message, if other than the receiver.

**MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 16.4.2 Pagination <Pgntn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Pagination of the message.

**Pagination <Pgntn>** contains the following elements (see "Pagination1" on page 412 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>       | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | PageNumber <PgNb>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 412  |
|    | LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 412  |

## 16.4.3 ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* General characteristics related to the report information.

*Impacted by:* C15 "ReportNumberRule"

**ReportGeneralDetails <RptGnIDtls>** contains the following **IntraBalanceReport6** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>       | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | ReportNumber <RptNb>          | [0..1] | ±         |             | 365  |
|    | QueryReference <QryRef>       | [0..1] | Text      |             | 366  |
|    | ReportIdentification <RptId>  | [0..1] | Text      |             | 366  |
|    | ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>      | [0..1] | ±         |             | 366  |
|    | ReportPeriod <RptPrd>         | [0..1] | ±         |             | 366  |
|    | Frequency <Frqcy>             | [0..1] | ±         |             | 366  |
|    | UpdateType <UpdTp>            | [1..1] | ±         |             | 367  |
|    | ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 367  |

### Constraints

- **ReportNumberRule**

If Long number (Exact5NumericTest) is used, then the report must be a delta reports (UpdateType: DELT).

If the report has multiple pages, then the ReportNumber must remain the same through all the pages. It is a unique number to the report.

Two reports of the same type sent one after the other to the same receiver in relation to the same safekeeping account must have different ReportNumbers. For example, a daily report sent on day 1 would have ReportNumber 001, on day 2, 002, etc.

### 16.4.3.1 ReportNumber <RptNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the report.

**ReportNumber <RptNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "Number3Choice" on page 410 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Short <Shrt>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |
| Or} | Long <Lng>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |

#### 16.4.3.2 QueryReference <QryRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the query message sent to request this statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.3.3 ReportIdentification <RptId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference common to all pages of a statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.3.4 ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time when the report was created.

**ReportDateTime <RptDtTm>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 16.4.3.5 ReportPeriod <RptPrd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Period for the statement.

**ReportPeriod <RptPrd>** contains one of the following elements (see "Period7Choice" on page 396 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>               | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | FromDateTimeToDateTime <FrDtTmToDtTm> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |
| Or} | FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>             | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |

#### 16.4.3.6 Frequency <Frqcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Frequency of the statement.

**Frequency <Frqcy>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Frequency22Choice"](#) on page 407 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 407  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 408  |

#### 16.4.3.7 UpdateType <UpdTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the statement is complete or contains changes only.

**UpdateType <UpdTp>** contains one of the following elements (see ["UpdateType15Choice"](#) on page 415 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 415  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 415  |

#### 16.4.3.8 ActivityIndicator <ActvtyInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether there is activity or information update reported in the statement.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator"](#) on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

### 16.4.4 CashAccount <CshAcct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account to or from which a cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C11 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**CashAccount <CshAcct>** contains the following elements (see ["CashAccount40"](#) on page 387 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

## Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

## 16.4.5 CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that owns the account.

**CashAccountOwner <CshAcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "SystemPartyIdentification8" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

## 16.4.6 CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the cash account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.



**CashAccountServicer <CshAcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see  
"BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr.<br>No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|----------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |                | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6             | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |                | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |                | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |                | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |                | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |                | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |                | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |                | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |                | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |                | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |                | 404  |

## 16.4.7 Movements <Mvmnts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the intrabalance movement transactions.

*Impacted by:* C17 "StatusAndReasonRule"

**Movements <Mvmnts>** contains the following **IntraBalancePending5** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 371  |
|     | <b>Movement</b> <Mvmnt>   | [1..*] |         | C13         | 372  |
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 374  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text    |             | 375  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 375  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 375  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 375  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 375  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 375  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |         |             | 375  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 376  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 376  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 376  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |         |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 377  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 378  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |         |             | 378  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |         |             | 378  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 379  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 379  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdwn>  | [0..*] |         |             | 379  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±       |             | 379  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 380  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±       |             | 380  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 380  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±       |             | 381  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>                               | [1..1] | ±       |             | 381  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 381  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 381  |
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnks>  | [0..*] |          |             | 381  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>   | [0..1] | ±        | C19         | 382  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>  | [0..1] | ±        | C16         | 382  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>  | [1..1] |          |             | 383  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesStlmTxId>     | [1..1] | Text     |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 384  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 385  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 385  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 385  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 385  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                      | [0..*] | ±        | C18         | 385  |

#### Constraints

- **StatusAndReasonRule**

StatusAndReason must be present or Movement(\*)/StatusAndReason must be present, but not both.

#### 16.4.7.1 StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Status and status reason of the transaction.

**StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>** contains the following elements (see "[PendingStatusAndReason2](#)" on page 437 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±    |             | 437  |
|    | SettlementStatus <SttlmSts> | [0..*] | ±    | C14         | 437  |

#### 16.4.7.2 Movement <Mvmnt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the individual intrabalance movement transaction.

*Impacted by:* [C13 "NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule"](#)

**Movement <Mvmnt>** contains the following **IntraBalancePending6** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>StatusAndReason</b> <StsAndRsn>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 374  |
|     | <b>AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctOwnrTxId>              | [1..1] | Text     |             | 375  |
|     | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>           | [0..1] | Text     |             | 375  |
|     | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text     |             | 375  |
|     | <b>ProcessorTransactionIdentification</b> <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text     |             | 375  |
|     | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text     |             | 375  |
|     | <b>CorporateActionEventIdentification</b> <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [0..1] | Text     |             | 375  |
|     | <b>BalanceFrom</b> <BalFr>  | [1..1] |          |             | 375  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 376  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 376  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 376  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |          |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 377  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±        |             | 378  |
|     | <b>BalanceTo</b> <BalTo>  | [1..1] |          |             | 378  |
|     | <b>Type</b> <Tp>  | [1..1] |          |             | 378  |
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>  | [1..1] | CodeSet  |             | 379  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 379  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown</b> <QtyBrkdown>                                       | [0..*] |          |             | 379  |
|     | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 379  |
|     | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 380  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 380  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp>                                     | [0..1] | ±        |             | 380  |
|     | <b>SettlementAmount</b> <SttlmAmt>  | [1..1] | ±        |             | 381  |
|     | <b>IntendedSettlementDate</b> <IntnddSttlmDt>                               | [1..1] | ±        |             | 381  |
|     | <b>StatusDate</b> <StsDt>   | [0..1] | DateTime |             | 381  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceIdentification</b> <CshSubBalId>                           | [0..1] | ±        |             | 381  |

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Linkages</b> <Lnkgs>  | [0..*] |          |             | 381  |
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>  | [0..1] | ±        | C19         | 382  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>   | [0..1] | ±        | C16         | 382  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>   | [1..1] |          |             | 383  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>            | [1..1] | Text     |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>          | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>   | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                           | [1..1] | Text     |             | 384  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 384  |
|     | <b>Priority</b> <Prty>   | [0..1] | ±        |             | 385  |
|     | <b>MessageOriginator</b> <MsgOrgtr>  | [0..1] | ±        |             | 385  |
|     | <b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>  | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 385  |
|     | <b>InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails</b><br><InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>      | [0..1] | Text     |             | 385  |
|     | <b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>                                     | [0..*] | ±        | C18         | 385  |

#### Constraints

- **NoAccountOwnerTransactionIdentificationRule**

If no reference is available for the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification, for example, the transaction was sent by fax, then the AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification must be NONREF.

#### 16.4.7.2.1 StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Status and status reason of the transaction.

**StatusAndReason <StsAndRsn>** contains the following elements (see "[PendingStatusAndReason2](#)" on page 437 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±    |             | 437  |
|    | SettlementStatus <SttlmSts> | [0..*] | ±    | C14         | 437  |

#### **16.4.7.2.2 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **16.4.7.2.3 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **16.4.7.2.4 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **16.4.7.2.5 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrcrTxId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **16.4.7.2.6 PoolIdentification <PoolId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **16.4.7.2.7 CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by the account servicer to unambiguously identify a corporate action event.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **16.4.7.2.8 BalanceFrom <BalFr>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance from which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceFrom <BalFr>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 376  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 376  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 376  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdown&gt;</b>   | [0..*] |         |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 377  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 377  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 378  |

#### 16.4.7.2.8.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 376  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 376  |

##### 16.4.7.2.8.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

##### 16.4.7.2.8.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |



#### 16.4.7.2.8.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdown>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdown>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 377  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 377  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 377  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 378  |

##### 16.4.7.2.8.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

##### 16.4.7.2.8.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

##### 16.4.7.2.8.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 16.4.7.2.8.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see  
"GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 16.4.7.2.9 BalanceTo <BalTo>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Balance to which the amount of money is moved.

**BalanceTo <BalTo>** contains the following **CashSubBalanceTypeAndQuantityBreakdown3**  
elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] |         |             | 378  |
| {Or | <b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 379  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 379  |
|     | <b>QuantityBreakdown &lt;QtyBrkdwn&gt;</b>    | [0..*] |         |             | 379  |
|     | <b>LotNumber &lt;LotNb&gt;</b>                | [0..1] | ±       |             | 379  |
|     | <b>LotAmount &lt;LotAmt&gt;</b>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 380  |
|     | <b>LotQuantity &lt;LotQty&gt;</b>             | [0..1] | ±       |             | 380  |
|     | <b>CashSubBalanceType &lt;CshSubBalTp&gt;</b> | [0..1] | ±       |             | 380  |

#### 16.4.7.2.9.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **CashBalanceType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 379  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 379  |

#### 16.4.7.2.9.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 480

#### 16.4.7.2.9.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cash balance expressed in a proprietary form.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 16.4.7.2.9.2 QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Breakdown of a quantity into lots such as tax lots, instrument series.

**QuantityBreakdown <QtyBrkdwn>** contains the following **AmountAndQuantityBreakdown1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | <b>LotNumber</b> <LotNb>                | [0..1] | ±    |             | 379  |
|    | <b>LotAmount</b> <LotAmt>               | [0..1] | ±    |             | 380  |
|    | <b>LotQuantity</b> <LotQty>             | [0..1] | ±    |             | 380  |
|    | <b>CashSubBalanceType</b> <CshSubBalTp> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 380  |

#### 16.4.7.2.9.2.1 LotNumber <LotNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification, for tax purposes, of a lot of identical securities that are bought at a certain date and at a certain price.

**LotNumber <LotNb>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification37](#)" on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 16.4.7.2.9.2.2 LotAmount <LotAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is part of the lot described.

**LotAmount <LotAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountAndDirection5](#)" on page 393 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

#### 16.4.7.2.9.2.3 LotQuantity <LotQty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Quantity of financial instruments that is part of the lot described.

**LotQuantity <LotQty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice](#)" on page 406 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 16.4.7.2.9.2.4 CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the securities sub balance type indicator (example restriction type for a market infrastructure).

**CashSubBalanceType <CshSubBalTp>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 16.4.7.2.10 SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money effectively settled and which will be credited to/debited from the account owner's cash account. It may differ from the instructed settlement amount based on market tolerance level.

**SettlementAmount <SttlmAmt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Amount2Choice"](#) on page 392 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 16.4.7.2.11 IntendedSettlementDate <IntnddSttlmDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the amount of money is intended to be moved.

**IntendedSettlementDate <IntnddSttlmDt>** contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 398 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 16.4.7.2.12 StatusDate <StsDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the status was assigned.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime"](#) on page 493

#### 16.4.7.2.13 CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number identifying a lot constituting the sub-balance.

**CashSubBalanceIdentification <CshSubBalId>** contains the following elements (see ["GenericIdentification37"](#) on page 408 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 16.4.7.2.14 Linkages <Lnkgs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Link to another transaction that must be processed after, before or at the same time.

**Linkages <Lnkgs>** contains the following **Linkages57** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
|     | <b>ProcessingPosition</b> <PrcgPos>  | [0..1] | ±    | C19         | 382  |
|     | <b>MessageNumber</b> <MsgNb>   | [0..1] | ±    | C16         | 382  |
|     | <b>Reference</b> <Ref>   | [1..1] |      |             | 383  |
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                           | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
|     | <b>ReferenceOwner</b> <RefOwnr>  | [0..1] | ±    |             | 384  |

#### 16.4.7.2.14.1 ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* When the transaction is to be executed relative to a linked transaction.

*Impacted by:* C19 "WithLinkageRule"

**ProcessingPosition <PrcgPos>** contains one of the following elements (see "ProcessingPosition7Choice" on page 412 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>    | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>Code</b> <Cd>           | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | <b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry> | [1..1] | ±       |             | 413  |

#### Constraints

- WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending. Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

#### 16.4.7.2.14.2 MessageNumber <MsgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Message type number/message identifier of the message referenced in the linkage sequence.

*Impacted by:* C16 "ShortLongNumberRule"

**MessageNumber <MsgNb>** contains one of the following elements (see "DocumentNumber5Choice" on page 399 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | ShortNumber <ShrtNb>        | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or  | LongNumber <LngNb>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or} | ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 399  |

#### Constraints

- **ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### 16.4.7.2.14.3 Reference <Ref>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference to the linked transaction.

**Reference <Ref>** contains one of the following **References34Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | <b>SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification</b><br><SciesSttlmTxId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraPositionMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraPosMvmntId>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 383  |
| Or  | <b>IntraBalanceMovementIdentification</b><br><IntraBalMvmntId>             | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>AccountServicerTransactionIdentification</b><br><AcctSvcrTxId>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification</b><br><MktInfstrctrTxId> | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
| Or  | <b>PoolIdentification</b> <PoolId>   | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |
| Or} | <b>OtherTransactionIdentification</b> <OthrTxId>                           | [1..1] | Text |             | 384  |

##### 16.4.7.2.14.3.1 SecuritiesSettlementTransactionIdentification <SciesSttlmTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of a securities settlement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

##### 16.4.7.2.14.3.2 IntraPositionMovementIdentification <IntraPosMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-position movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.7.2.14.3.3 IntraBalanceMovementIdentification <IntraBalMvmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the intra-balance movement transaction as known by the account owner (or instructing party acting on its behalf).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.7.2.14.3.4 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.7.2.14.3.5 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.7.2.14.3.6 PoolIdentification <PoolId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.7.2.14.3.7 OtherTransactionIdentification <OthrTxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction that cannot be identified using a standard reference element present in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 16.4.7.2.14.4 ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party responsible for generating the reference.

**ReferenceOwner <RefOwnr>** contains one of the following elements (see "PartyIdentification127Choice" on page 419 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 419  |
| Or} | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 420  |



#### 16.4.7.2.15 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the transaction is to be executed with a high priority.

**Priority <Prty>** contains one of the following elements (see "[PriorityNumeric4Choice](#)" on page 414 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

#### 16.4.7.2.16 MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that originated the message, if other than the sender.

**MessageOriginator <MsgOrgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[SystemPartyIdentification8](#)" on page 420 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

#### 16.4.7.2.17 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date/time on which the trade was executed.

*Datatype:* "[ISODatetime](#)" on page 493

#### 16.4.7.2.18 InstructionProcessingAdditionalDetails <InstrPrcgAddtlDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional settlement processing information which can not be included within the structured fields of the message.

*Datatype:* "[Max350Text](#)" on page 497

#### 16.4.7.2.19 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C18 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 415 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 17 Message Items Types

## 17.1 MessageComponents

### 17.1.1 Account

#### 17.1.1.1 CashAccountType2Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 387  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 387  |

##### 17.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalCashAccountType1Code" on page 480](#)

##### 17.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 497](#)

#### 17.1.1.2 CashAccount40

*Definition:* Provides the details to identify an account.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] | ±       |             | 388  |
|    | Currency <Ccy>          | [0..1] | CodeSet | C2          | 388  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|    | Proxy <Prxy>            | [0..1] | ±       |             | 389  |

## Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
/Identification Must be present  
Or /Proxy Must be present

### 17.1.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 391 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | IBAN <IBAN>             | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C9          | 391  |
| Or} | Other <Othr>            | [1..1] | ±             |             | 392  |

### 17.1.1.2.2 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 387 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 387  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 387  |

### 17.1.1.2.3 Currency <Ccy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode"](#) on page 475

## Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 17.1.1.2.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

*Usage:* The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 498

### 17.1.1.2.5 Proxy <Prxy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

**Proxy <Prxy>** contains the following elements (see "ProxyAccountIdentification1" on page 390 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] |         |             | 390  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 391  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 391  |
|     | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 391  |

### 17.1.1.3 GenericAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a generic account identification.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|     | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] |         |             | 390  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 390  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 390  |
|     | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 390  |

#### 17.1.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max34Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 390  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 390  |

##### 17.1.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 480

##### 17.1.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.1.4 ProxyAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Type <Tp>               | [0..1] |         |             | 390  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 391  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 391  |
|     | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 391  |

##### 17.1.1.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the proxy identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 391  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 391  |

#### 17.1.1.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalProxyAccountType1Code" on page 481

#### 17.1.1.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.1.4.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 496

## 17.1.2 Account Identification

### 17.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | IBAN <IBAN>             | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C9          | 391  |
| Or} | Other <Othr>            | [1..1] | ±             |             | 392  |

#### 17.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

*Impacted by:* C9 "IBAN"

*Datatype:* "IBAN2007Identifier" on page 494

## Constraints

### • IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

#### 17.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 389 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 389  |
|     | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] |         |             | 390  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 390  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 390  |
|     | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 390  |

## 17.1.3 Amount

### 17.1.3.1 Amount2Choice

*Definition:* Choice between an amount with or without the currency.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>            | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 392  |
| Or} | AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>     | [1..1] | Amount | C1, C8      | 392  |

#### 17.1.3.1.1 AmountWithoutCurrency <AmtWthtCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of monetary units specified in a currency where the unit of currency is implied by the context.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 474

#### 17.1.3.1.2 AmountWithCurrency <AmtWthCcy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of monetary units specified in a currency where the unit of currency is explicit.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 473



### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

## 17.1.3.2 AmountAndDirection5

*Definition:* Amount of money debited or credited on the books of an account servicer.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | Amount <Amt>            | [1..1] | Amount  | C1, C8      | 393  |
|    | CreditDebit <CdtDbt>    | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 393  |

### 17.1.3.2.1 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money that is debited or credited.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C8 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 473

### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 17.1.3.2.2 CreditDebit <CdtDbt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates if the amount is a debited or a credited.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 478

| CodeName | Name   | Definition                |
|----------|--------|---------------------------|
| CRDT     | Credit | Operation is an increase. |
| DBIT     | Debit  | Operation is a decrease.  |

## 17.1.4 Amount Range

### 17.1.4.1 ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice

*Definition:* Choice between ranges of values in which an amount is considered valid or a specified amount value which has to be matched or unmatched to be valid.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type   | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|------|
| {Or | FromAmount <FrAmt>      | [1..1] | ±      |             | 394  |
| Or  | ToAmount <ToAmt>        | [1..1] | ±      |             | 394  |
| Or  | FromToAmount <FrToAmt>  | [1..1] |        |             | 394  |
|     | FromAmount <FrAmt>      | [1..1] | ±      |             | 395  |
|     | ToAmount <ToAmt>        | [1..1] | ±      |             | 395  |
| Or  | EqualAmount <EQAmt>     | [1..1] | Amount |             | 395  |
| Or} | NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt> | [1..1] | Amount |             | 395  |

#### 17.1.4.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 395 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt> | [1..1] | Amount    |             | 396  |
|    | Included <Incl>          | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 396  |

#### 17.1.4.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 395 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt> | [1..1] | Amount    |             | 396  |
|    | Included <Incl>          | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 396  |

#### 17.1.4.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.

**FromToAmount <FrToAmt>** contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromAmount <FrAmt>      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 395  |
|    | ToAmount <ToAmt>        | [1..1] | ±    |             | 395  |

#### 17.1.4.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 395 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt> | [1..1] | Amount    |             | 396  |
|    | Included <Incl>          | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 396  |

#### 17.1.4.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see "[AmountRangeBoundary1](#)" on page 395 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt> | [1..1] | Amount    |             | 396  |
|    | Included <Incl>          | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 396  |

#### 17.1.4.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 474

#### 17.1.4.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.

*Datatype:* "[ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 474

### 17.1.4.2 AmountRangeBoundary1

*Definition:* Limit for an amount range.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt> | [1..1] | Amount    |             | 396  |
|    | Included <Incl>          | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 396  |

#### 17.1.4.2.1 BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount value of the range limit.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 474

#### 17.1.4.2.2 Included <Incl>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the boundary amount is included in the range of amount values.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

## 17.1.5 Date Period

### 17.1.5.1 DatePeriod2

*Definition:* Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 396  |

#### 17.1.5.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

#### 17.1.5.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 493

### 17.1.5.2 Period7Choice

*Definition:* Choice between date and date-time for the specification of a period.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>               | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | FromDateTimeToDateTime <FrDtTmToDtTm> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |
| Or} | FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>             | [1..1] | ±    |             | 397  |

#### 17.1.5.2.1 FromDateTimeToDateTime <FrDtTmToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

**FromDateTimeToDateTime <FrDtTmToDtTm>** contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 398 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |
|    | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 17.1.5.2.2 FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

**FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>** contains the following elements (see ["Period2"](#) on page 397 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 397  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 397  |

## 17.1.6 Date Time

### 17.1.6.1 Period2

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDate <FrDt>         | [1..1] | Date |             | 397  |
|    | ToDate <ToDt>           | [1..1] | Date |             | 397  |

#### 17.1.6.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the range starts.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate"](#) on page 493

#### 17.1.6.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the range ends.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 493](#)

### 17.1.6.2 DateAndDateTime2Choice

*Definition:* Choice between a date or a date and time format.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Date <Dt>               | [1..1] | Date     |             | 398  |
| Or} | DateTime <DtTm>         | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 17.1.6.2.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date.

*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 493](#)

#### 17.1.6.2.2 DateTime <DtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specified date and time.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 493](#)

## 17.1.7 Date Time Period

### 17.1.7.1 DateTimePeriod1

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
|    | FromDateTime <FrDtTm>   | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |
|    | ToDateTime <ToDtTm>     | [1..1] | DateTime |             | 398  |

#### 17.1.7.1.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the period starts.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 493](#)

#### 17.1.7.1.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the period ends.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 493](#)

## 17.1.8 Document

### 17.1.8.1 DocumentNumber5Choice

*Definition:* Choice between a short document number, a long document number or a proprietary document number.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | ShortNumber <ShrtNb>        | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or  | LongNumber <LngNb>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 399  |
| Or} | ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 399  |

#### Constraints

- **ShortLongNumberRule**

ShortNumber must contain the FIN message type number of the linked message. LongNumber must contain the XML message identifier of the linked message.

#### 17.1.8.1.1 ShortNumber <ShrtNb>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Message type number of the document referenced.

*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 495

#### 17.1.8.1.2 LongNumber <LngNb>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* MX Message identifier of the referenced document.

*Datatype:* "ISO20022MessageIdentificationText" on page 496

#### 17.1.8.1.3 ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary document identification.

**ProprietaryNumber <PrtryNb>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification36" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 410  |

## 17.1.9 Financial Institution Identification

### 17.1.9.1 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 400  |
|    | MemberIdentification <Mmbld>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 400  |

#### 17.1.9.1.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

**ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice](#)" on page 473 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 473  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 473  |

#### 17.1.9.1.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a member of a clearing system.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

### 17.1.9.2 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.



| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>  | [1..1] |               |             | 401  |
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |
|    | BranchIdentification <BrnchId>                   | [0..1] |               |             | 404  |
|    | Identification <Id>                              | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

#### 17.1.9.2.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

**FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>** contains the following **FinancialInstitutionIdentification23** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                          | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | BICFI <BICFI>                                    | [0..1] | IdentifierSet | C6          | 401  |
|    | ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | LEI <LEI>  | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 402  |
|    | Name <Nm>  | [0..1] | Text          |             | 402  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr>                          | [0..1] | ±             |             | 402  |
|    | Other <Othr>                                     | [0..1] | ±             |             | 403  |

##### 17.1.9.2.1.1 BICFI <BICFI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Impacted by:* C6 "BICFI"

*Datatype:* "BICFIDec2014Identifier" on page 494

## Constraints

### • BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### 17.1.9.2.1.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

**ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>** contains the following elements (see "[ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2](#)" on page 400 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                 | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 400  |
|    | MemberIdentification <Mmbld>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 400  |

#### 17.1.9.2.1.3 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[LEIIdentifier](#)" on page 494

#### 17.1.9.2.1.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 496

#### 17.1.9.2.1.5 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstIAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress27" on page 421 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | AddressType <AdrTp>              | [0..1] |         |             | 422  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 422  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 423  |
|     | CareOf <CareOf>                  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | Department <Dept>                | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | SubDepartment <SubDept>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | StreetName <StrtNm>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | BuildingNumber <BldgNb>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | BuildingName <BldgNm>            | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | Floor <Flr>                      | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | UnitNumber <UnitNb>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | PostBox <PstBx>                  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | Room <Room>                      | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | PostCode <PstCd>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | TownName <TwnNm>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>     | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | DistrictName <DstrctNm>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | Country <Ctry>                   | [0..1] | CodeSet | C7          | 425  |
|     | AddressLine <AdrLine>            | [0..7] | Text    |             | 425  |

#### 17.1.9.2.1.6 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericFinancialIdentification1](#)" on page 405 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 406  |
|     | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] |         |             | 406  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 406  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 406  |
|     | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 406  |

#### 17.1.9.2.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

*Usage:* This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

**BranchIdentification <BrnchId>** contains the following **BranchData5** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 404  |
|    | Name <Nm>               | [0..1] | Text          |             | 404  |
|    | PostalAddress <PstlAdr> | [0..1] | ±             |             | 404  |

##### 17.1.9.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

##### 17.1.9.2.2.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[LEIIdentifier](#)" on page 494

##### 17.1.9.2.2.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 496

##### 17.1.9.2.2.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress27" on page 421 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | AddressType <AdrTp>              | [0..1] |         |             | 422  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 422  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 423  |
|     | CareOf <CareOf>                  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | Department <Dept>                | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | SubDepartment <SubDept>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | StreetName <StrtNm>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | BuildingNumber <BldgNb>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | BuildingName <BldgNm>            | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | Floor <Flr>                      | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | UnitNumber <UnitNb>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | PostBox <PstBx>                  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | Room <Room>                      | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | PostCode <PstCd>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | TownName <TwnNm>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>     | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | DistrictName <DstrctNm>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | Country <Ctry>                   | [0..1] | CodeSet | C7          | 425  |
|     | AddressLine <AdrLine>            | [0..7] | Text    |             | 425  |

### 17.1.9.3 GenericFinancialIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 406  |
|     | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] |         |             | 406  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 406  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 406  |
|     | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text    |             | 406  |

### 17.1.9.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 17.1.9.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following  
**FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 406  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 406  |

#### 17.1.9.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 481

#### 17.1.9.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 17.1.9.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

## 17.1.10 Financial Instrument Quantity

### 17.1.10.1 FinancialInstrumentQuantity1Choice

*Definition:* Choice between formats for the quantity of security.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>   | Mult.  | Type     | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---------------------------|--------|----------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Unit <Unit>               | [1..1] | Quantity |             | 407  |
| Or  | FaceAmount <FaceAmt>      | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |
| Or} | AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal> | [1..1] | Amount   |             | 407  |

#### 17.1.10.1.1 Unit <Unit>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as a number, for example, a number of shares.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 495

#### 17.1.10.1.2 FaceAmount <FaceAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the face amount, that is, the principal, of a debt instrument.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 474

#### 17.1.10.1.3 AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Quantity expressed as an amount representing the current amortised face amount of a bond, for example, a periodic reduction/increase of a bond's principal amount.

*Datatype:* "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 474

### 17.1.11 Frequency

#### 17.1.11.1 Frequency22Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for a frequency, for example, the frequency of delivery of a statement.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 407  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 408  |

##### 17.1.11.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Frequency expressed as an ISO 20022 code.

*Datatype:* "EventFrequency7Code" on page 479

| CodeName | Name       | Definition  |
|----------|------------|---|
| YEAR     | Annual     | Event takes place every year or once a year.            |
| ADHO     | Adhoc      | Event takes place as necessary.                         |
| MNTH     | Monthly    | Event takes place every month or once a month.          |
| DAIL     | Daily      | Event takes place every day.                            |
| INDA     | IntraDay   | Event takes place several times a day.                  |
| WEEK     | Weekly     | Event takes place once a week.                          |
| SEMI     | SemiAnnual | Event takes place every six months or two times a year. |

| CodeName | Name           | Definition   |
|----------|----------------|--|
| QUTR     | Quarterly      | Event takes place every three months or four times a year. |
| TOMN     | EveryTwoMonths | Event takes place every two months.                        |
| TOWK     | EveryTwoWeeks  | Event takes place every two weeks.                         |
| TWMN     | TwiceAMonth    | Event takes place two times a month.                       |
| OVNG     | Overnight      | Event takes place overnight.                               |
| ONDE     | OnDemand       | Event takes place on demand.                               |

#### 17.1.11.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Frequency expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

## 17.1.12 Identification Information

### 17.1.12.1 GenericIdentification37

*Definition:* Identification expressed as a proprietary type and narrative description.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 408  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [0..1] | Text |             | 408  |

#### 17.1.12.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497

#### 17.1.12.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 497



### 17.1.12.2 GenericIdentification30

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.12.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

*Datatype:* "Exact4AlphaNumericText" on page 495

#### 17.1.12.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.12.2.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Short textual description of the scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 17.1.12.3 GenericIdentification36

*Definition:* Identification using a proprietary scheme.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 410  |

#### 17.1.12.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.12.3.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

### 17.1.12.3.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Short textual description of the scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

## 17.1.13 Miscellaneous

### 17.1.13.1 Number3Choice

*Definition:* Choice of 3 and 5 exact numeric number.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Short <Shrt>            | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |
| Or} | Long <Lng>              | [1..1] | Text |             | 410  |

#### 17.1.13.1.1 Short <Shrt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of maximum 3 numeric text.

*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 495

#### 17.1.13.1.2 Long <Lng>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of maximum 5 numeric text. Is only to be used in a delta statement.

*Datatype:* "Exact5NumericText" on page 496

### 17.1.13.2 AdditionalParameters16

*Definition:* Specifies additional parameters to the message or transaction.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>  | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | PartialSettlement <PrtlSttlm>  | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 411  |
|    | PreviousPartialConfirmationIdentification<br><PrvsPrtlConfId>        | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | PoolIdentification <PoolId>  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtId>                   | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification<br><MktInfrstrctrTxId> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 411  |
|    | ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrTxId>                       | [0..1] | Text    |             | 412  |

#### 17.1.13.2.1 PartialSettlement <PrtlSttlm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies partial settlement information.

*Datatype:* "PartialSettlement2Code" on page 486

| CodeName | Name               | Definition   |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| PAIN     | PartialSettlement  | Confirmation is for partial settlement. Part of the transaction remains unsettled. |
| PARC     | PartiallyConfirmed | Confirmation is for partial settlement. No additional settlement will take place.  |

#### 17.1.13.2.2 PreviousPartialConfirmationIdentification <PrvsPrtlConfld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the confirmation previously sent to confirm the partial settlement of a transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.13.2.3 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.13.2.4 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the transaction as known by the account servicer.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.13.2.5 PoolIdentification <Poolld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collective reference identifying a set of messages.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.13.2.6 CorporateActionEventIdentification <CorpActnEvtld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by the account servicer to unambiguously identify a corporate action event.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.13.2.7 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.13.2.8 ProcessorTransactionIdentification <PrctrId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the transaction as assigned by the processor.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.13.3 Pagination1

*Definition:* Number used to sequence pages when it is not possible for data to be conveyed in a single message and the data has to be split across several pages (messages).

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>       | Mult.  | Type      | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------|
|    | PageNumber <PgNb>             | [1..1] | Text      |             | 412  |
|    | LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd> | [1..1] | Indicator |             | 412  |

##### 17.1.13.3.1 PageNumber <PgNb>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Page number.

*Datatype:* "Max5NumericText" on page 497

##### 17.1.13.3.2 LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the last page.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 495):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

#### 17.1.13.4 ProcessingPosition7Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the processing position.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 413  |

#### Constraints

- **WithLinkageRule**

If Code WITH is used, then the one or more instruction which are linked become bound and which must be executed together. Even if one single transactions/instructions/notifications can not be executed, then all the other transactions/instructions/notifications must also be kept pending.

Therefore the use of code WITH must be limited to combine up to 2 or 3 transactions/instructions/notifications.

#### 17.1.13.4.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Processing position expressed as an ISO 20022 code.

*Datatype:* "ProcessingPosition3Code" on page 490

| CodeName | Name        | Definition  |
|----------|-------------|---|
| AFTE     | After       | Specifies that the transaction/instruction is to be executed after the linked transaction/instruction.  |
| WITH     | With        | Specifies that the transaction/instruction is to be executed with the linked transaction/instruction.   |
| BEFO     | Before      | Specifies that the transaction/instruction is to be executed before the linked transaction/instruction. |
| INFO     | Information | Specifies that the transactions/instructions are linked for information purposes only.                  |

#### 17.1.13.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Processing position expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.13.5 LinkageType3Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the linkage type.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 413  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 414  |

#### 17.1.13.5.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Linkage type expressed as an ISO 20022 code.

*Datatype:* "LinkageType1Code" on page 485

| CodeName | Name   | Definition   |
|----------|--------|--|
| LINK     | Link   | Request is to link the referenced transactions.      |
| UNLK     | Unlink | Request is to unlink the referenced transactions.    |
| SOFT     | Soft   | Request is to soft link the referenced transactions. |

#### 17.1.13.5.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Linkage type expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.13.6 PriorityNumeric4Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the priority.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Numeric <Nmrc>          | [1..1] | Text |             | 414  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 414  |

##### 17.1.13.6.1 Numeric <Nmrc>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the execution priority of the instruction with a number between 0001 and 9999.

*Datatype:* "[Exact4NumericText](#)" on page 495

##### 17.1.13.6.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the execution priority of the instruction with a proprietary scheme.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

### 17.1.13.7 UpdateType15Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the update information.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 415  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 415  |

#### 17.1.13.7.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the report is complete or contains changes only.

*Datatype:* "StatementUpdateType1Code" on page 492

| CodeName | Name     | Definition                       |
|----------|----------|----------------------------------|
| COMP     | Complete | Statement is complete.           |
| DELT     | Delta    | Statement contains changes only. |

#### 17.1.13.7.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the report is complete or contains changes only.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

### 17.1.13.8 SupplementaryData1

*Definition:* Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type              | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|------|
|    | PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm> | [0..1] | Text              |             | 416  |
|    | Envelope <Envlp>        | [1..1] | (External Schema) |             | 416  |

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### 17.1.13.8.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.13.8.2 Envelope <Envlp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

*Type:* (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

#### 17.1.13.9 NumberCount1Choice

*Definition:* Choice of number count type.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                    | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | CurrentInstructionNumber <CurInstrNb>      | [1..1] | Text |             | 416  |
| Or} | TotalNumber <TtlNb>                        | [1..1] |      | C11, C7     | 417  |
|     | CurrentInstructionNumber <CurInstrNb>      | [1..1] | Text |             | 417  |
|     | TotalOfLinkedInstructions <TtlOfLkdInstrs> | [1..1] | Text |             | 417  |

#### Constraints

- **CurrentInstructionNumberRule**

If the Sender wants to indicate that this instruction is linked to one or more settlement instruction, then the CurrentInstructionNumber must be specified.

#### 17.1.13.9.1 CurrentInstructionNumber <CurInstrNb>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the instruction in a range of linked settlement instructions.



*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 495

#### 17.1.13.9.2 TotalNumber <TtlNb>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total numbers of settlement transactions, receipts and deliveries, and the concerned settlement transaction number.

*Impacted by:* C11 "CurrentInstructionNumberRule", C7 "BlockTradeGuideline"

**TotalNumber <TtlNb>** contains the following **TotalNumber1** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                    | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|--|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | CurrentInstructionNumber <CurlInstrNb>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 417  |
|    | TotalOfLinkedInstructions <TtlOfLkdInstrs> | [1..1] | Text |             | 417  |

#### Constraints

- **BlockTradeGuideline**

In a block trade instruction, the total number of children must be provided using TotalOfLinkedInstructions.

The CurrentInstructionNumber of the parent must be 000. The children must have an incremental CurrentInstructionNumber from 001 to 999.

For more details, see the relevant market practice document on [www.smpg.info](http://www.smpg.info).

- **CurrentInstructionNumberRule**

If the Sender wants to indicate that this instruction is linked to one or more settlement instruction, then the CurrentInstructionNumber must be specified.

#### 17.1.13.9.2.1 CurrentInstructionNumber <CurlInstrNb>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Sequential number of the instruction in a range of linked settlement instructions.

*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 495

#### 17.1.13.9.2.2 TotalOfLinkedInstructions <TtlOfLkdInstrs>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total number of settlement instructions that are linked together.

*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 495

## 17.1.14 Party Identification

### 17.1.14.1 PartyIdentification136

*Definition:* Identification of the party.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

#### 17.1.14.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the party.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification120Choice](#)" on page 418 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 418  |
| Or  | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 419  |
| Or} | NameAndAddress <NmAndAdr>           | [1..1] | ±             |             | 419  |

#### 17.1.14.1.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

*Datatype:* "[LEIIdentifier](#)" on page 494

#### 17.1.14.2 PartyIdentification120Choice

*Definition:* Choice between different formats for the identification of a party.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 418  |
| Or  | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 419  |
| Or} | NameAndAddress <NmAndAdr>           | [1..1] | ±             |             | 419  |

#### 17.1.14.2.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Impacted by:* [C5 "AnyBIC"](#)

*Datatype:* "[AnyBICDec2014Identifier](#)" on page 493

## Constraints

### • AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### 17.1.14.2.2 ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier, as assigned to a financial institution using a proprietary identification scheme.

**ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification36](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 410  |

#### 17.1.14.2.3 NameAndAddress <NmAndAdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name and address of a party.

**NameAndAddress <NmAndAdr>** contains the following elements (see "[NameAndAddress5](#)" on page 421 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Name <Nm>               | [1..1] | Text |             | 421  |
|    | Address <Adr>           | [0..1] | ±    |             | 421  |

#### 17.1.14.3 PartyIdentification127Choice

*Definition:* Choice of identification of a party.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>             | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AnyBIC <AnyBIC>                     | [1..1] | IdentifierSet | C5          | 419  |
| Or} | ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId> | [1..1] | ±             |             | 420  |

##### 17.1.14.3.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Impacted by:* [C5 "AnyBIC"](#)

*Datatype:* "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 493

#### Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### 17.1.14.3.2 ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier, as assigned to a financial institution using a proprietary identification scheme.

**ProprietaryIdentification <PrtryId>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification36" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 410  |

#### 17.1.14.4 SystemPartyIdentification8

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a party within a system.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                       | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>                           | [1..1] | ±    |             | 420  |
|    | ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId> | [0..1] | ±    |             | 420  |

##### 17.1.14.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification to unambiguously identify the party within the system.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

##### 17.1.14.4.2 ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the party responsible for the maintenance of the party reference data.

**ResponsiblePartyIdentification <RspnsblPtyId>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification136" on page 417 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type          | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | ±             |             | 418  |
|    | LEI <LEI>               | [0..1] | IdentifierSet |             | 418  |

## 17.1.15 Postal Address

### 17.1.15.1 NameAndAddress5

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a party.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Name <Nm>               | [1..1] | Text |             | 421  |
|    | Address <Adr>           | [0..1] | ±    |             | 421  |

#### 17.1.15.1.1 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.15.1.2 Address <Adr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Postal address of the party.

**Address <Adr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress1" on page 425 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | AddressType <AdrTp>              | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 426  |
|    | AddressLine <AdrLine>            | [0..5] | Text    |             | 426  |
|    | StreetName <StrtNm>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 426  |
|    | BuildingNumber <BldgNb>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 426  |
|    | PostCode <PstCd>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 427  |
|    | TownName <TwnNm>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 427  |
|    | CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 427  |
|    | Country <Ctry>                   | [1..1] | CodeSet | C7          | 427  |

### 17.1.15.2 PostalAddress27

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | AddressType <AdrTp>              | [0..1] |         |             | 422  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                        | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 422  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>              | [1..1] | ±       |             | 423  |
|     | CareOf <CareOf>                  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | Department <Dept>                | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | SubDepartment <SubDept>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | StreetName <StrtNm>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 423  |
|     | BuildingNumber <BldgNb>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | BuildingName <BldgNm>            | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | Floor <Flr>                      | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | UnitNumber <UnitNb>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | PostBox <PstBx>                  | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | Room <Room>                      | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | PostCode <PstCd>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | TownName <TwnNm>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 424  |
|     | TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>     | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | DistrictName <DstrctNm>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 425  |
|     | Country <Ctry>                   | [0..1] | CodeSet | C7          | 425  |
|     | AddressLine <AdrLine>            | [0..7] | Text    |             | 425  |

#### 17.1.15.2.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the nature of the postal address.

**AddressType <AdrTp>** contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 422  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 423  |

##### 17.1.15.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a code.

*Datatype:* "AddressType2Code" on page 476

| CodeName | Name        | Definition   |
|----------|-------------|--|
| ADDR     | Postal      | Address is the complete postal address.                    |
| PBOX     | POBox       | Address is a postal office (PO) box.                       |
| HOME     | Residential | Address is the home address.                               |
| BIZZ     | Business    | Address is the business address.                           |
| MLTO     | MailTo      | Address is the address to which mail is sent.              |
| DLVY     | DeliveryTo  | Address is the address to which delivery is to take place. |

#### 17.1.15.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.15.2.2 CareOf <CareOf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies an addressee that is accepting the correspondence for the intended recipient. Using care of ensures the correspondence reaches the right recipient rather than getting returned to the sender.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 496

#### 17.1.15.2.3 Department <Dept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "[Max70Text](#)" on page 498

#### 17.1.15.2.4 SubDepartment <SubDept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "[Max70Text](#)" on page 498

#### 17.1.15.2.5 StreetName <StrtNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a street or thoroughfare.

---

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.6 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.7 BuildingName <BldgNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the building or house.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.8 Floor <Flr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Floor or storey within a building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 498

#### **17.1.15.2.9 UnitNumber <UnitNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a flat or dwelling within the building.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.10 PostBox <PstBx>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.11 Room <Room>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Building room number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 498

#### **17.1.15.2.12 PostCode <PstCd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.13 TownName <TwnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.



*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.14 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specific location name within the town.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.15 DistrictName <DstrctNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 496

#### **17.1.15.2.16 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

#### **17.1.15.2.17 Country <Ctry>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Nation with its own government.

*Impacted by:* C7 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 478

##### **Constraints**

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### **17.1.15.2.18 AddressLine <AdrLine>**

*Presence:* [0..7]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 498

#### **17.1.15.3 PostalAddress1**

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>          | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|----------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|    | AddressType <AdrTp>              | [0..1] | CodeSet |             | 426  |
|    | AddressLine <AdrLine>            | [0..5] | Text    |             | 426  |
|    | StreetName <StrtNm>              | [0..1] | Text    |             | 426  |
|    | BuildingNumber <BldgNb>          | [0..1] | Text    |             | 426  |
|    | PostCode <PstCd>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 427  |
|    | TownName <TwnNm>                 | [0..1] | Text    |             | 427  |
|    | CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 427  |
|    | Country <Ctry>                   | [1..1] | CodeSet | C7          | 427  |

#### 17.1.15.3.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the nature of the postal address.

*Datatype:* "AddressType2Code" on page 476

| CodeName | Name        | Definition   |
|----------|-------------|--|
| ADDR     | Postal      | Address is the complete postal address.                    |
| PBOX     | POBox       | Address is a postal office (PO) box.                       |
| HOME     | Residential | Address is the home address.                               |
| BIZZ     | Business    | Address is the business address.                           |
| MLTO     | MailTo      | Address is the address to which mail is sent.              |
| DLVY     | DeliveryTo  | Address is the address to which delivery is to take place. |

#### 17.1.15.3.2 AddressLine <AdrLine>

*Presence:* [0..5]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, that is presented in free format text.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 498

#### 17.1.15.3.3 StreetName <StrtNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a street or thoroughfare.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 498

#### 17.1.15.3.4 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 496

17.1.15.3.5 PostCode <PstCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 496

17.1.15.3.6 TownName <TwnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 497

17.1.15.3.7 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision of a country for example, state, region, county.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 497

17.1.15.3.8 Country <Ctry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Nation with its own government.

Impacted by: C7 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 478

Constraints

- Country  
The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

17.1.16 Status

17.1.16.1 AcknowledgedAcceptedStatus24Choice

Definition: Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 428  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 428  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 428  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 428  |

#### 17.1.16.1.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "NoReasonCode" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.1.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the acknowledged accepted status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following **AcknowledgementReason12** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 428  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 428  |

##### 17.1.16.1.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason provided for the status.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AcknowledgementReason15Choice](#)" on page 435 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 436  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 436  |

##### 17.1.16.1.2.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* "Max210Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.16.2 CancellationStatus15Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 429  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 429  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 429  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 429  |

#### 17.1.16.2.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "NoReasonCode" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.2.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the cancellation status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following **CancellationReason10** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 429  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 429  |

##### 17.1.16.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction is cancelled.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following elements (see "CancellationReason21Choice" on page 446 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 446  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 447  |

##### 17.1.16.2.2.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* "Max210Text" on page 497

### 17.1.16.3 CancellationStatus14Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 430  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 430  |

#### 17.1.16.3.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "NoReasonCode" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.3.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the cancellation status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following elements (see "CancellationReason9" on page 470 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 470  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 470  |

### 17.1.16.4 PendingReason28Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the pending reason.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 430  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 431  |

#### 17.1.16.4.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason code why the instruction or request is pending.

*Datatype:* "PendingReason6Code" on page 489

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Instruction was received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis. |

| CodeName | Name                   | Definition  |
|----------|------------------------|---|
| CONF     | AwaitingConfirmation   | Awaiting confirmation from the counterparty.  |
| OTHR     | Other                  | Other. See Narrative.   |
| CDRG     | ConditionalRegistrar   | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process at the registrar.                          |
| CDCY     | ConditionalCurrency    | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process linked to the currency of the transaction. |
| CDRE     | ConditionalRealignment | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process of realignment at the issuer CSD.          |

#### 17.1.16.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason code why the instruction or request is pending, using a proprietary format.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.5 PendingReason30Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the pending reason.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 431  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 432  |

##### 17.1.16.5.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the cancellation request is pending.

*Datatype:* "[PendingReason9Code](#)" on page 489

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Instruction was received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis. |
| CONF     | AwaitingConfirmation          | Awaiting confirmation from the counterparty.  |

| CodeName | Name                                    | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| OTHR     | Other                                   | Other. See Narrative.   |
| CDRG     | ConditionalRegistrar                    | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process at the registrar.                          |
| CDCY     | ConditionalCurrency                     | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process linked to the currency of the transaction. |
| CDRE     | ConditionalRealignment                  | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process of realignment at the issuer CSD.          |
| CDAC     | ConditionalDeliveryAwaitingCancellation | Awaiting cancellation of one of the party.  |
| INBC     | IncompleteNumberCount                   | Not all the instructions part of a pool have been received.                                       |

#### 17.1.16.5.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the cancellation request is pending.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.6 AcknowledgementReason12Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the acknowledgement reason.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 432  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 433  |

##### 17.1.16.6.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies additional information about the processed instruction.

*Datatype:* "[AcknowledgementReason5Code](#)" on page 474

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis. |
| SMPG     | MarketPracticeRuleDiscrepancy | Instruction is accepted but does not comply with the market practice rule       |



| CodeName | Name                         | Definition   |
|----------|------------------------------|--|
|          |                              | published for the concerned market or process.   |
| OTHR     | Other                        | Other. See Narrative.  |
| CDCY     | ConditionalCurrency          | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process linked to the currency of the transaction.          |
| CDRG     | ConditionalRegistrar         | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process at the registrar.                                   |
| CDRE     | ConditionalRealignment       | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process of realignment at the issuer CSD.                   |
| NSTP     | NotStraightThroughProcessing | Instruction was not straight through processing and had to be processed manually.                          |
| RQWV     | AcceptedWithoutVotingRights  | Instruction registration is accepted but the registration is not in full, that is, not with voting rights. |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed         | Instruction was received after market deadline.  |

#### 17.1.16.6.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies additional information about the processed instruction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.7 DeniedReason16Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the denied reason.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 433  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 434  |

#### 17.1.16.7.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the request was denied.

*Datatype:* "[DeniedReason4Code](#)" on page 478

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Received after the account servicer's deadline.   |
| DCAN     | DeniedSinceAlreadyCancelled   | Cancellation request was denied since the instruction has already been cancelled.       |
| DPRG     | DeniedSinceInProgress         | Cancellation request was denied because the process of settlement is in progress.       |
| DREP     | DeniedSinceRepoEnded          | Cancellation request was denied because the repo was cancelled.                         |
| DSET     | DeniedSinceAlreadySettled     | Cancellation request was denied because the instruction was already settled.            |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed          | Received after market deadline.   |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.   |
| CDRG     | ConditionalRegistrar          | Execution is denied due to the execution of a process at the registrar.                 |
| CDCY     | ConditionalCurrency           | Execution is denied due to a process linked to the currency of the transaction.         |
| CDRE     | ConditionalRealignment        | Execution is denied due to the execution of a process of realignment at the issuer CSD. |

#### 17.1.16.7.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the request was denied.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.8 DeniedStatus16Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 435  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 435  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 435  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 435  |

#### 17.1.16.8.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "NoReasonCode" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.8.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the denied status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following **DeniedReason11** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 435  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 435  |

##### 17.1.16.8.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the request has a denied status.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following elements (see "DeniedReason16Choice" on page 433 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 433  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 434  |

##### 17.1.16.8.2.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* "Max210Text" on page 497

#### 17.1.16.9 AcknowledgementReason15Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the acknowledgement reason.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 436  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 436  |

### 17.1.16.9.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies additional information about the processed instruction.

*Datatype:* "AcknowledgementReason3Code" on page 474

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition   |
|----------|-------------------------------|--|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis.  |
| SMPG     | MarketPracticeRuleDiscrepancy | Instruction is accepted but does not comply with the market practice rule published for the concerned market or process. |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.  |

### 17.1.16.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies additional information about the processed instruction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

### 17.1.16.10 ProprietaryReason4

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the reason related to a status.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Reason <Rsn>                              | [0..1] | ±    |             | 436  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 437  |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalReasonInformationRule**

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

### 17.1.16.10.1 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the reason related to a status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.10.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional information about the processed instruction.

*Datatype:* "[Max210Text](#)" on page 497

#### 17.1.16.11 PendingStatusAndReason2

*Definition:* Choice of the intra-balance movement status type.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>     | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-----------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>  | [0..*] | ±    |             | 437  |
|    | SettlementStatus <SttlmSts> | [0..*] | ±    | C14         | 437  |

##### 17.1.16.11.1 ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details on the processing status of the transaction.

**ProcessingStatus <PrcgSts>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ProcessingStatus66Choice](#)" on page 458 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 458  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 458  |
| Or  | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 459  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 459  |

##### 17.1.16.11.2 SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the settlement status of a transaction.

*Impacted by:* C14 "[PendingToFailingRule](#)"

**SettlementStatus <SttlmSts>** contains one of the following elements (see  
"SettlementStatus16Choice" on page 459 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Pending <Pdg>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 460  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 460  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 460  |
| Or  | Failing <Fng>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 461  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 461  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 461  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>            | [1..1] | ±       |             | 461  |

#### Constraints

- **PendingToFailingRule**

A pending transaction (PEND) becomes a failing transaction (PENF) on the settlement date instructed in the message, during the end of day reporting.

### 17.1.16.12 PendingStatus39Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 438  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 438  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 439  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 439  |

#### 17.1.16.12.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "NoReasonCode" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.12.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the pending status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following **PendingReason17** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 439  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 439  |

#### 17.1.16.12.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why a cancellation request sent for the related instruction is pending.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[PendingReason30Choice](#)" on page 431 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 431  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 432  |

#### 17.1.16.12.2.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* "[Max210Text](#)" on page 497

### 17.1.16.13 PendingStatus38Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 439  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 439  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 440  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 440  |

#### 17.1.16.13.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "[NoReasonCode](#)" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.13.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the pending status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following **PendingReason16** elements

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 440  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 440  |

#### 17.1.16.13.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why a cancellation request sent for the related instruction is pending.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following elements (see ["PendingReason28Choice"](#) on page 430 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 430  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 431  |

#### 17.1.16.13.2.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* ["Max210Text"](#) on page 497

#### 17.1.16.14 RejectionOrRepairStatus40Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 440  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 441  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 441  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 441  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 442  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 442  |

#### 17.1.16.14.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* ["NoReasonCode"](#) on page 485



| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.14.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the rejection or repair status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following **RejectionOrRepairReason34** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 441  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 441  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 442  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 442  |

##### 17.1.16.14.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a rejected or repair status.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following **RejectionAndRepairReason34Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 441  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 442  |

##### 17.1.16.14.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a repair or rejection status.

*Datatype:* "RejectionReason35Code" on page 491

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| CASH     | CashAccount                   | Unrecognised or invalid cash account.   |
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Transaction/instruction received after the account servicer's specified deadline. |
| REFE     | ReferenceRejection            | Instruction has a reference identical to another previously received instruction. |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed          | Received after market deadline.   |
| DDAT     | SettlementDateRejection       | Unrecognised or invalid settlement date.  |
| NRGN     | NotFoundRejection             | Instruction could not be found.   |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.   |
| INVM     | InvalidModificationRequest    | Invalid or unrecognized modification request.                                     |

| CodeName | Name        | Definition                    |
|----------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| INVL     | InvalidLink | Invalid or unrecognized link. |

#### 17.1.16.14.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a repair or rejection status.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.14.2.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* "[Max210Text](#)" on page 497

#### 17.1.16.15 RejectionOrRepairStatus39Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 442  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 443  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 443  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 443  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 443  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 444  |

#### 17.1.16.15.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "[NoReasonCode](#)" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

### 17.1.16.15.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the rejection or repair status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following **RejectionOrRepairReason33** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 443  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 443  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 443  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 444  |

#### 17.1.16.15.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a rejected or repair status.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following **RejectionAndRepairReason33Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 443  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 443  |

##### 17.1.16.15.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a repair or rejection status.

*Datatype:* "RejectionReason34Code" on page 491

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Transaction/instruction received after the account servicer's specified deadline. |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed          | Received after market deadline.   |
| CASH     | CashAccount                   | Unrecognised or invalid cash account.   |
| NRGM     | NoMatch                       | More than one instruction match the criteria.                                     |
| NRGN     | NotFoundRejection             | Instruction could not be found.   |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.   |
| REFE     | ReferenceRejection            | Instruction has a reference identical to another previously received instruction. |

##### 17.1.16.15.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a repair or rejection status.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.15.2.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* "[Max210Text](#)" on page 497

#### 17.1.16.16 RejectionOrRepairStatus38Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 444  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 444  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 445  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 445  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 446  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 446  |

##### 17.1.16.16.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "[NoReasonCode](#)" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

##### 17.1.16.16.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the rejection or repair status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following **RejectionOrRepairReason32** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 445  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 445  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 446  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 446  |

#### 17.1.16.16.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a rejected or repair status.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following **RejectionAndRepairReason32Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 445  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 446  |

#### 17.1.16.16.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a repair or rejection status.

*Datatype:* "RejectionReason33Code" on page 490

| CodeName | Name                              | Definition  |
|----------|-----------------------------------|---|
| CASH     | CashAccount                       | Unrecognised or invalid cash account.   |
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed     | Transaction/instruction received after the account servicer's specified deadline. |
| DMON     | SettlementAmountRejection         | Unrecognised or invalid settlement amount.  |
| NCRR     | SettlementAmountCurrencyRejection | Unrecognised or invalid settlement amount currency.                               |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed              | Received after market deadline.   |
| INVL     | InvalidLink                       | Invalid or unrecognized link.   |
| INVB     | InvalidBalance                    | Instruction aims at using an invalid balance.                                     |
| INVN     | InvalidLotNumber                  | Invalid or unrecognized lot number.   |
| VALR     | InvalidRule                       | Account servicer validation rule rejection.                                       |
| MONY     | InsufficientMoney                 | Insufficient money in your account.   |
| CAEV     | CorporateActionRejection          | Corporate action pending on the financial instrument instructed.                  |
| DDAT     | SettlementDateRejection           | Unrecognised or invalid settlement date.  |

| CodeName | Name                       | Definition   |
|----------|----------------------------|--|
| REFE     | ReferenceRejection         | Instruction has a reference identical to another previously received instruction.                          |
| OTHR     | Other                      | Other. See Narrative.  |
| DQUA     | QuantityRejection          | Unrecognised or invalid instructed quantity.   |
| DSEC     | InvalidSecurity            | Unrecognised or invalid financial instrument identification.   |
| MINO     | MinimumSettlementQuantity  | Quantity instructed is lower than the minimum existing settlement quantity for the financial instrument.   |
| MUNO     | MultipleSettlementQuantity | Quantity instructed is not a multiple of an existing settlement quantity lot for the financial instrument. |

#### 17.1.16.16.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/request has a repair or rejection status.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see ["GenericIdentification30" on page 409](#) for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.16.2.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* ["Max210Text" on page 497](#)

#### 17.1.16.17 CancellationReason21Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the cancellation reason.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 446  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 447  |

#### 17.1.16.17.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the related instruction is cancelled, or the related cancellation request is executed.

*Datatype:* "CancelledStatusReason5Code" on page 477

| CodeName | Name                | Definition                            |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| CANI     | CancelledByYourself | Transaction is cancelled by yourself. |
| OTHR     | Other               | Other. See Narrative.                 |

### 17.1.16.17.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the related instruction is cancelled, or the related cancellation request is executed.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

### 17.1.16.18 CancellationReason19Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the cancellation reason.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 447  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 448  |

#### 17.1.16.18.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the related instruction is cancelled, or the related cancellation request is executed.

*Datatype:* "CancelledStatusReason13Code" on page 476

| CodeName | Name                         | Definition   |
|----------|------------------------------|--|
| CANI     | CancelledByYourself          | Transaction is cancelled by yourself.  |
| CANS     | CancelledBySystem            | Transaction is cancelled by the system.  |
| CSUB     | CancelledByAgent             | Instruction has been cancelled by the agent due to an event deadline extension.  |
| CXLR     | EndOfLife                    | Transaction is rejected by the executing party, the rejection is final therefore the order is cancelled in the system. |
| CANT     | CancelledDueToTransformation | Original transaction has been cancelled and replaced due to a corporate action.  |

| CodeName | Name                            | Definition   |
|----------|---------------------------------|--|
| CANZ     | CancelledSplitPartialSettlement | Original transaction has been cancelled and replaced to allow a partial or split settlement.   |
| CORP     | CancelledDueToCorporateAction   | Transaction has been cancelled due to a corporate action.  |
| SCEX     | SecuritiesNoLongerEligible      | Transaction has been cancelled; the security no longer exists or is no longer eligible on the market instructed. For corporate action related cancellation, CORP should be used. |
| OTHR     | Other                           | Other. See Narrative.  |
| CTHP     | CancelledByThirdParty           | Instruction is cancelled by a Third party.   |

#### 17.1.16.18.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the related instruction is cancelled, or the related cancellation request is executed.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.19 ModificationProcessingStatus9Choice

*Definition:* Choice of modification processing status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 448  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 449  |

##### 17.1.16.19.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the status of a modification request.

*Datatype:* "[ModificationProcessingStatus1Code](#)" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition   |
|----------|----------|--|
| PACK     | Accepted | Modification request has been acknowledged for further processing by the account servicer. |
| REJT     | Rejected | Modification has been rejected for further processing.                                     |



| CodeName | Name      | Definition  |
|----------|-----------|---|
| MODC     | Completed | Modification has been completed.  |
| DEND     | Denied    | Modification will not be executed.  |
| MODP     | Pending   | Modification is pending. It is not known at this time whether modified can be executed. |
| REPR     | InRepair  | Modification request is in repair.  |

#### 17.1.16.19.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the status of a modification request.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.20 SettlementStatus26Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the settlement status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 449  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 449  |

##### 17.1.16.20.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the status of settlement of an instruction/financial instrument movement.

*Datatype:* "[SecuritiesSettlementStatus1Code](#)" on page 492

| CodeName | Name    | Definition  |
|----------|---------|---|
| PEND     | Pending | Instruction is pending. Settlement at the instructed settlement date is still possible.     |
| PENF     | Failing | Instruction is failing. Settlement at the instructed settlement date is no longer possible. |

##### 17.1.16.20.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the status of settlement of an instruction/financial instrument movement.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

### 17.1.16.21 ProcessingStatus71Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the processing status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 450  |
| Or  | Pending <Pdg>                     | [1..1] | ±    |             | 450  |
| Or  | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 451  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 451  |
| Or  | Denied <Dnd>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 452  |
| Or  | Completed <Cmplt>                 | [1..1] | ±    | C5          | 452  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 452  |

#### 17.1.16.21.1 AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Request has been acknowledged by the account servicer.

**AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AcknowledgedAcceptedStatus21Choice](#)" on page 472 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 472  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 472  |

#### 17.1.16.21.2 Pending <Pdg>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Modification is pending. It is not known at this time whether modification can be affected.

**Pending <Pdg>** contains one of the following elements (see "[PendingStatus38Choice](#)" on page 439 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 439  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 439  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 440  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 440  |

#### 17.1.16.21.3 Rejected <Rjctd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Modification request has been rejected for further processing.

**Rejected <Rjctd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[RejectionOrRepairStatus40Choice](#)" on page 440 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 440  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 441  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 441  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 441  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 442  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 442  |

#### 17.1.16.21.4 Repair <Rpr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction or request is accepted but in repair.

**Repair <Rpr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[RejectionOrRepairStatus39Choice](#)" on page 442 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 442  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 443  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 443  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 443  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 443  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 444  |

### 17.1.16.21.5 Denied <Dnd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Modification request will not be executed.

**Denied <Dnd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DeniedStatus16Choice](#)" on page 434 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 435  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 435  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 435  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 435  |

### 17.1.16.21.6 Completed <Cmpltd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Modification request was completed.

*Impacted by:* [C5 "AdditionalReasonInformationRule"](#)

**Completed <Cmpltd>** contains the following elements (see "[ProprietaryReason4](#)" on page 436 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Reason <Rsn>                              | [0..1] | ±    |             | 436  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 437  |

#### Constraints

- AdditionalReasonInformationRule**

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

### 17.1.16.21.7 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status that cannot be reported using one of the available standard status.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[ProprietaryStatusAndReason6](#)" on page 470 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>      | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProprietaryStatus <PrtrySts> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 471  |
|    | ProprietaryReason <PrtryRsn> | [0..*] | ±    | C5          | 471  |

### 17.1.16.22 ProcessingStatus69Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the processing status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | PendingCancellation <PdgCxl>      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 453  |
| Or  | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or  | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or  | Denied <Dnd>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 454  |
| Or} | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 455  |

#### 17.1.16.22.1 PendingCancellation <PdgCxl>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cancellation is pending processing.

**PendingCancellation <PdgCxl>** contains one of the following elements (see "PendingStatus39Choice" on page 438 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 438  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 438  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 439  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 439  |

#### 17.1.16.22.2 Rejected <Rjctd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction or request has been rejected for further processing.

**Rejected <Rjctd>** contains one of the following elements (see "RejectionOrRepairStatus39Choice" on page 442 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 442  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 443  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 443  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 443  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 443  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 444  |

#### 17.1.16.22.3 Repair <Rpr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction or request is accepted but in repair.

**Repair <Rpr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[RejectionOrRepairStatus39Choice](#)" on page 442 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 442  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 443  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 443  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 443  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 443  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 444  |

#### 17.1.16.22.4 AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction has been acknowledged by the account servicer.

**AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AcknowledgedAcceptedStatus24Choice](#)" on page 427 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 428  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 428  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 428  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 428  |

#### 17.1.16.22.5 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Status that cannot be reported using one of the available standard status.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[ProprietaryStatusAndReason6](#)" on page 470 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>      | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProprietaryStatus <PrtrySts> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 471  |
|    | ProprietaryReason <PrtryRsn> | [0..*] | ±    | C5          | 471  |

#### 17.1.16.22.6 Denied <Dnd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction/Request will not be executed.

**Denied <Dnd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[DeniedStatus16Choice](#)" on page 434 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 435  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 435  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 435  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 435  |

#### 17.1.16.22.7 Cancelled <Canc>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Cancellation requested executed.

**Cancelled <Canc>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CancellationStatus15Choice](#)" on page 428 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 429  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 429  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±       |             | 429  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 429  |

#### 17.1.16.23 ProcessingStatus68Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the processing status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 455  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 456  |

##### 17.1.16.23.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the status of an instruction.

*Datatype:* "[TransactionProcessingStatus3Code](#)" on page 492

| CodeName | Name                 | Definition  |
|----------|----------------------|---|
| CAND     | Cancelled            | Instruction has been cancelled.   |
| PACK     | AcknowledgedAccepted | Instruction has been acknowledged/<br>accepted for further processing by the<br>account servicer. |
| REJT     | Rejected             | Instruction has been rejected for further<br>processing.  |

| CodeName | Name     | Definition                             |
|----------|----------|--|
| REPR     | InRepair | Instruction is accepted but in repair. |

#### 17.1.16.23.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a choice of status for the processing of an intra-balance movement.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.24 ProcessingStatus67Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the processing status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Rejected <Rjctd>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 456  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or  | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or  | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 457  |

##### 17.1.16.24.1 Rejected <Rjctd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction or request has been rejected for further processing.

**Rejected <Rjctd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[RejectionOrRepairStatus38Choice](#)" on page 444 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 444  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 444  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 445  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 445  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 446  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 446  |



#### 17.1.16.24.2 Repair <Rpr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction or request is accepted but in repair.

**Repair <Rpr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[RejectionOrRepairStatus38Choice](#)" on page 444 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 444  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 444  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 445  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 445  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 446  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 446  |

#### 17.1.16.24.3 Cancelled <Canc>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction has been cancelled. The status on the processing of a cancellation request must be provided using a cancellation request report message.

**Cancelled <Canc>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CancellationStatus14Choice](#)" on page 430 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 430  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 430  |

#### 17.1.16.24.4 AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAcptd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction has been acknowledged by the account servicer.

**AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAcptd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AcknowledgedAcceptedStatus21Choice](#)" on page 472 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcdfRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 472  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 472  |

#### 17.1.16.24.5 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a choice of status for the processing of an intra-balance movement.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see ["ProprietaryStatusAndReason6"](#) on page 470 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>      | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProprietaryStatus <PrtrySts> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 471  |
|    | ProprietaryReason <PrtryRsn> | [0..*] | ±    | C5          | 471  |

### 17.1.16.25 ProcessingStatus66Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the processing status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>           | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| {Or | AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 458  |
| Or  | Repair <Rpr>                      | [1..1] | ±    |             | 458  |
| Or  | Cancelled <Canc>                  | [1..1] | ±    |             | 459  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>               | [1..1] | ±    |             | 459  |

#### 17.1.16.25.1 AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction has been acknowledged by the account servicer.

**AcknowledgedAccepted <AckdAccptd>** contains one of the following elements (see ["AcknowledgedAcceptedStatus21Choice"](#) on page 472 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpctdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 472  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 472  |

#### 17.1.16.25.2 Repair <Rpr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction or request is accepted but in repair.

**Repair <Rpr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[RejectionOrRepairStatus38Choice](#)" on page 444 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>            | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 444  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                              | [1..*] |         |             | 444  |
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [0..*] |         |             | 445  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 445  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 446  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 446  |

### 17.1.16.25.3 Cancelled <Canc>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction has been cancelled. The status on the processing of a cancellation request must be provided using a cancellation request report message.

**Cancelled <Canc>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CancellationStatus14Choice](#)" on page 430 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 430  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 430  |

### 17.1.16.25.4 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a choice of status for the processing of an intra-balance movement.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[ProprietaryStatusAndReason6](#)" on page 470 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>      | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProprietaryStatus <PrtrySts> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 471  |
|    | ProprietaryReason <PrtryRsn> | [0..*] | ±    | C5          | 471  |

### 17.1.16.26 SettlementStatus16Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for the settlement status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Pending <Pdg>                  | [1..1] |         |             | 460  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 460  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 460  |
| Or  | Failing <FIng>                 | [1..1] |         |             | 461  |
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 461  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 461  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>            | [1..1] | ±       |             | 461  |

#### Constraints

- **PendingToFailingRule**

A pending transaction (PEND) becomes a failing transaction (PENF) on the settlement date instructed in the message, during the end of day reporting.

#### 17.1.16.26.1 Pending <Pdg>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction is pending. Settlement at the instructed settlement date is still possible.

**Pending <Pdg>** contains one of the following **PendingStatus36Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 460  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 460  |

#### 17.1.16.26.1.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpcfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "NoReasonCode" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.26.1.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the pending status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following elements (see "PendingReason14" on page 466 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 466  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 466  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 469  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 470  |

#### 17.1.16.26.2 Failing <FIng>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Instruction is failing. Settlement at the instructed settlement date is no longer possible.

**Failing <FIng>** contains one of the following **FailingStatus9Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 461  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 461  |

##### 17.1.16.26.2.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "NoReasonCode" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

##### 17.1.16.26.2.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the failing status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following elements (see "FailingReason7" on page 462 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 462  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 462  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 465  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 466  |

##### 17.1.16.26.3 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary status.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see ["ProprietaryStatusAndReason6"](#) on page 470 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>      | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProprietaryStatus <PrtrySts> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 471  |
|    | ProprietaryReason <PrtryRsn> | [0..*] | ±    | C5          | 471  |

### 17.1.16.27 FailingReason7

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction or request has a failing settlement status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 462  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 462  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 465  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 466  |

#### 17.1.16.27.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction has a failing status.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following **FailingReason7Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 462  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 465  |

#### 17.1.16.27.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction has a failing settlement status.

*Datatype:* ["FailingReason3Code"](#) on page 481

| CodeName | Name                             | Definition   |
|----------|----------------------------------|--|
| AWMO     | AwaitingMoney                    | Financial instruments are delivered, but still awaiting money from counterparty.   |
| BYIY     | BuyInProcedure                   | Buy-in procedure has started on the market (on your behalf if your instruction is a receipt, by the counterparty if your instruction is a delivery). |
| CLAT     | CounterpartyTooLateForSettlement | Counterparty's instruction was too late for settlement, that is the matching or settlement problems was solved too late.                             |
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed    | Instruction was received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis.  |

| CodeName | Name  | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| CANR     | CancellationConfirmationRequested               | Instruction was in suspense. Suspense period is finished so your cancellation or confirmation of instruction is required.   |
| CAIS     | AwaitingSecurities                              | Awaiting financial instruments from a corporate action or other procedure, for example, conversion, dematerialisation, exchange, registration, stamping, splitting. |
| OBJT     | UnderObjection                                  | Financial instruments are, for example, stolen, in dispute, under objection.  |
| AWSH     | AwaitingSecuritiesFromCounterparty              | Financial instruments have not yet been received from the counterparty (if receive against payment trade), the money has been delivered.                            |
| PHSE     | PhysicalDeliveryDelay                           | Settlement is physical. Financial instruments are being delivered.  |
| STCD     | ConfirmationDiscrepancy                         | Discrepancy in the settlement confirmation.   |
| DOCY     | AwaitingDocumentsOrEndorsementsFromYou          | Awaiting documents or endorsements from you.  |
| MLAT     | MoneySecuritiesTooLateForSettlement             | Covering money/financial instruments were received too late for completing settlement on a same day basis.  |
| DOCC     | AwaitingDocumentsOrEndorsementsFromCounterparty | Awaiting documents or endorsements from counterparty.   |
| BLOC     | AccountBlocked                                  | Your account is blocked, no instruction can settle over the account.  |
| CHAS     | EnquirySent                                     | A chaser/enquiry has been sent.   |
| NEWI     | NewIssues                                       | Financial instrument is a new issue and not yet available/tradable.   |
| CLAC     | CounterpartyInsufficientSecurities              | Insufficient deliverable financial instruments in counterparty's account or counterparty does not hold financial instruments.                                       |
| MUNO     | MultipleSettlementAmount                        | Quantity instructed is not a multiple of an existing settlement quantity lot for the financial instrument.  |
| GLOB     | GlobalFormSecurities                            | Settlement cannot be executed; financial instruments are in global form.  |
| PREA     | YourInstructionOnHold                           | Your instruction is a preadvice, that is, for matching only.  |
| PART     | TradeSettlesInPartials                          | Trade will settle in partials.  |
| NOFX     | NoForeignExchangeInstruction                    | A foreign exchange instruction from you is missing.   |
| CMON     | CounterpartyInsufficientMoney                   | Insufficient money in counterparty's account.   |
| YCOL     | CollateralShortage                              | Insufficient collateral in your account to execute the instruction.   |

| CodeName | Name                                       | Definition  |
|----------|--|---|
| COLL     | SecuritiesPledgedAsCollateral              | Financial instruments are not deliverable as they are pledged as collateral.  |
| DEPO     | RefusedDepositForIssueOfDepositoryReceipts | Deposit of shares for the issuing of depository receipts has been refused. The allotment granted by the issuer is exceeded by your transaction. |
| FLIM     | MaximumForeignLimitReached                 | Insufficient deliverable financial instruments in your account as maximum foreign limit has been reached.                                       |
| INCA     | IncomeAdjustementRequired                  | Financial instruments require income adjustment, for example, dividend or interest.   |
| LINK     | PendingLinkedInstruction                   | Your instruction is pending settlement because the instruction linked to it is pending.   |
| LACK     | LackOfSecurities                           | Insufficient financial instruments in your account.   |
| LALO     | SecuritiesLoanedOut                        | Financial instruments are out on loan.  |
| MONY     | InsufficientMoney                          | Insufficient money in your account.   |
| NCON     | ConfirmationNotReceived                    | Confirmation of settlement has not yet been received.   |
| REFS     | NotInGoodOrder                             | Delivery/receipt was refused because physical financial instruments are not in good order.  |
| SDUT     | LackOfStampDutyInformation                 | Stamp duty information is missing.  |
| BATC     | ProcessingBatchDifference                  | Processing batch differs in the counterparty's instruction, for example, daytime/real-time versus overnight.                                    |
| CYCL     | AwaitingNextSettlementCycle                | Your instruction is confirmed in the local market or is ready for settlement, awaiting next settlement cycle.                                   |
| SBLO     | SecuritiesBlocked                          | Financial instruments are blocked due to, for example, a corporate action event, realignment.   |
| CPEC     | CounterpartyInReceivership                 | Counterparty is in receivership (form of bankruptcy where a court appointed person - the receiver - manages the affairs of the business).       |
| MINO     | MinimumSettlementAmount                    | Quantity instructed is lower than the minimum existing settlement quantity for the financial instrument.  |
| IAAD     | StatusReasonInvestigation                  | Pending reason being investigated.  |
| OTHR     | Other                                      | Other. See Narrative.   |
| PHCK     | PhysicalSecuritiesVerification             | Physical financial instruments have been received and are being checked for authenticity.   |
| BENO     | BeneficialOwnershipDisagreement            | Disagreement in beneficial ownership.   |



| CodeName | Name                                      | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| BOTH     | BothInstructionsOnHold                    | Counterparty's instruction and your instruction are on hold/frozen/ in a preadvice mode.  |
| CLHT     | ClearingHouseTrade                        | Instructed settlement date does not agree with the settlement date on the clearing house trade, that is, a specific type of trade in India.               |
| DENO     | UnavailableDeliverableDenominatedQuantity | Quantity instructed does not match the denomination available/deliverable. Physical securities need to be obtained in deliverable denominated quantities. |
| DISA     | NaturalDisaster                           | Exceptional closing of all financial institutions due to natural disaster, for example, earthquake.   |
| DKNY     | CounterpartyReturnedShares                | Counterparty has returned or refuses the securities.  |
| FROZ     | SecuritiesFrozenAtCSD                     | Financial instruments are blocked at the Central Security Depository (CSD) following a corporate event.   |
| LAAW     | AwaitingOtherTransaction                  | Awaiting settlement of a purchase to cover failing positions.   |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed                      | Instruction was received after market deadline.   |
| LIQU     | InsufficientCentralBankLiquidity          | Central bank liquidity is insufficient.   |
| PRCY     | CounterpartyInstructionOnHold             | Counterparty's instruction is a preadvice, that is, for matching only.  |
| REGT     | CertificatesRejected                      | Certificates have been lodged with the registrar but rejected due to incomplete documentation or foreign ownership limitation reached.                    |
| SETS     | SettlementSystemMethodModified            | Settlement system/method has been modified at central securities depository to allow settlement.  |
| CERT     | WrongCertificatesNumbers                  | Certificate number error.   |
| PRSY     | SystemOnHold                              | Transaction was put on hold/frozen by the system.   |
| INBC     | IncompleteNumberCount                     | Not all the instructions part of a pool have been received.   |

#### 17.1.16.27.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction has a failing settlement status.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.27.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* "[Max210Text](#)" on page 497

#### 17.1.16.28 PendingReason14

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction or request has a pending status.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|---|--------|---------|-------------|------|
|     | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] |         |             | 466  |
| {Or | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 466  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>                       | [1..1] | ±       |             | 469  |
|     | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text    |             | 470  |

##### 17.1.16.28.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction has a pending status.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following **PendingReason26Choice** elements

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 466  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 469  |

##### 17.1.16.28.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction has a pending status.

*Datatype:* "[PendingReason10Code](#)" on page 486

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| AWMO     | AwaitingMoney | Financial instruments are delivered, but still awaiting money from counterparty. |

| CodeName | Name  | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed                   | Instruction was received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis.   |
| CAIS     | AwaitingSecurities                              | Awaiting financial instruments from a corporate action or other procedure, for example, conversion, dematerialisation, exchange, registration, stamping, splitting. |
| REFU     | InstructionRefusedOrNotRecognised               | Instruction has been refused or not recognised and is represented automatically.  |
| AWSH     | AwaitingSecuritiesFromCounterparty              | Financial instruments have not yet been received from the counterparty (if receive against payment trade), the money has been delivered.                            |
| PHSE     | PhysicalDeliveryDelay                           | Settlement is physical. Financial instruments are being delivered.  |
| TAMM     | TradeAmendedInMarket                            | Trade is being amended in the market.   |
| DOCY     | AwaitingDocumentsOrEndorsementsFromYou          | Awaiting documents or endorsements from you.  |
| DOCC     | AwaitingDocumentsOrEndorsementsFromCounterparty | Awaiting documents or endorsements from counterparty.   |
| BLOC     | AccountBlocked                                  | Your account is blocked, no instruction can settle over the account.  |
| CHAS     | EnquirySent                                     | A chaser/enquiry has been sent.   |
| NEWI     | NewIssues                                       | Financial instrument is a new issue and not yet available/tradable.   |
| CLAC     | CounterpartyInsufficientSecurities              | Insufficient deliverable financial instruments in counterparty's account or counterparty does not hold financial instruments.                                       |
| MUNO     | MultipleSettlementAmount                        | Quantity instructed is not a multiple of an existing settlement quantity lot for the financial instrument.  |
| GLOB     | GlobalFormSecurities                            | Settlement cannot be executed; financial instruments are in global form.  |
| PREA     | YourInstructionOnHold                           | Your instruction is a preadvice, that is, for matching only.  |
| PART     | TradeSettlesInPartials                          | Trade will settle in partials.  |
| NMAS     | NoMatchingRequired                              | Instruction has not been matched; matching process is not required.   |
| NOFX     | NoForeignExchangeInstruction                    | A foreign exchange instruction from you is missing.   |
| CMON     | CounterpartyInsufficientMoney                   | Insufficient money in counterparty's account.   |
| YCOL     | CollateralShortage                              | Insufficient collateral in your account to execute the instruction.   |

| CodeName | Name                                       | Definition  |
|----------|--|---|
| COLL     | SecuritiesPledgedAsCollateral              | Financial instruments are not deliverable as they are pledged as collateral.  |
| DEPO     | RefusedDepositForIssueOfDepositoryReceipts | Deposit of shares for the issuing of depository receipts has been refused. The allotment granted by the issuer is exceeded by your transaction. |
| FLIM     | MaximumForeignLimitReached                 | Insufficient deliverable financial instruments in your account as maximum foreign limit has been reached.                                       |
| INCA     | IncomeAdjustementRequired                  | Financial instruments require income adjustment, for example, dividend or interest.   |
| LINK     | PendingLinkedInstruction                   | Your instruction is pending settlement because the instruction linked to it is pending.   |
| FUTU     | AwaitingSettlementDate                     | Awaiting settlement date. No settlement problems to be reported.  |
| LACK     | LackOfSecurities                           | Insufficient financial instruments in your account.   |
| LALO     | SecuritiesLoanedOut                        | Financial instruments are out on loan.  |
| MONY     | InsufficientMoney                          | Insufficient money in your account.   |
| NCON     | ConfirmationNotReceived                    | Confirmation of settlement has not yet been received.   |
| REFS     | NotInGoodOrder                             | Delivery/receipt was refused because physical financial instruments are not in good order.  |
| SDUT     | LackOfStampDutyInformation                 | Stamp duty information is missing.  |
| BATC     | ProcessingBatchDifference                  | Processing batch differs in the counterparty's instruction, for example, daytime/real-time versus overnight.                                    |
| CYCL     | AwaitingNextSettlementCycle                | Your instruction is confirmed in the local market or is ready for settlement, awaiting next settlement cycle.                                   |
| SBLO     | SecuritiesBlocked                          | Financial instruments are blocked due to, for example, a corporate action event, realignment.   |
| CPEC     | CounterpartyInReceivership                 | Counterparty is in receivership (form of bankruptcy where a court appointed person - the receiver - manages the affairs of the business).       |
| MINO     | MinimumSettlementAmount                    | Quantity instructed is lower than the minimum existing settlement quantity for the financial instrument.  |
| IAAD     | StatusReasonInvestigation                  | Pending reason being investigated.  |
| OTHR     | Other                                      | Other. See Narrative.   |
| PHCK     | PhysicalSecuritiesVerification             | Physical financial instruments have been received and are being checked for authenticity.   |

| CodeName | Name                                      | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| BENO     | BeneficialOwnershipDisagreement           | Disagreement in beneficial ownership.   |
| BOTH     | BothInstructionsOnHold                    | Counterparty's instruction and your instruction are on hold/frozen/ in a preadvice mode.  |
| CLHT     | ClearingHouseTrade                        | Instructed settlement date does not agree with the settlement date on the clearing house trade, that is, a specific type of trade in India.               |
| DENO     | UnavailableDeliverableDenominatedQuantity | Quantity instructed does not match the denomination available/deliverable. Physical securities need to be obtained in deliverable denominated quantities. |
| DISA     | NaturalDisaster                           | Exceptional closing of all financial institutions due to natural disaster, for example, earthquake.   |
| DKNY     | CounterpartyReturnedShares                | Counterparty has returned or refuses the securities.  |
| FROZ     | SecuritiesFrozenAtCSD                     | Financial instruments are blocked at the Central Security Depository (CSD) following a corporate event.   |
| LAAW     | AwaitingOtherTransaction                  | Awaiting settlement of a purchase to cover failing positions.   |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed                      | Instruction was received after market deadline.   |
| LIQU     | InsufficientCentralBankLiquidity          | Central bank liquidity is insufficient.   |
| PRCY     | CounterpartyInstructionOnHold             | Counterparty's instruction is a preadvice, that is, for matching only.  |
| REGT     | CertificatesRejected                      | Certificates have been lodged with the registrar but rejected due to incomplete documentation or foreign ownership limitation reached.                    |
| SETS     | SettlementSystemMethodModified            | Settlement system/method has been modified at central securities depository to allow settlement.  |
| CERT     | WrongCertificatesNumbers                  | Certificate number error.   |
| PRSY     | SystemOnHold                              | Transaction was put on hold/frozen by the system.   |
| INBC     | IncompleteNumberCount                     | Not all the instructions part of a pool have been received.   |

#### 17.1.16.28.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction has a pending status.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see ["GenericIdentification30"](#) on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.28.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* ["Max210Text"](#) on page 497

#### 17.1.16.29 CancellationReason9

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction or request is cancelled.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 470  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 470  |

#### 17.1.16.29.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction is cancelled.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following elements (see ["CancellationReason19Choice"](#) on page 447 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 447  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 448  |

#### 17.1.16.29.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* ["Max210Text"](#) on page 497

#### 17.1.16.30 ProprietaryStatusAndReason6

*Definition:* Provides the proprietary status and reason of an instruction or an instruction cancellation.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>      | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|------------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | ProprietaryStatus <PrtrySts> | [1..1] | ±    |             | 471  |
|    | ProprietaryReason <PrtryRsn> | [0..*] | ±    | C5          | 471  |

#### 17.1.16.30.1 ProprietaryStatus <PrtrySts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the status related to an instruction.

**ProprietaryStatus <PrtrySts>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 409 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|-------------------------|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Identification <Id>     | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | Issuer <Issr>           | [1..1] | Text |             | 409  |
|    | SchemeName <SchmeNm>    | [0..1] | Text |             | 409  |

#### 17.1.16.30.2 ProprietaryReason <PrtryRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the reason related to a proprietary status.

*Impacted by:* C5 "[AdditionalReasonInformationRule](#)"

**ProprietaryReason <PrtryRsn>** contains the following elements (see "[ProprietaryReason4](#)" on page 436 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Reason <Rsn>                              | [0..1] | ±    |             | 436  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 437  |

#### Constraints

- **AdditionalReasonInformationRule**

The AdditionalReasonInformation element must not contain information that can be provided in a structured field unless bilaterally agreed.

#### 17.1.16.31 AcknowledgementReason9

*Definition:* Specifies additional information about the processed instruction.

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 472  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 472  |

### 17.1.16.31.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason provided for the status.

**Code <Cd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AcknowledgementReason12Choice](#)" on page 432 for details)

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 432  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | ±       |             | 433  |

### 17.1.16.31.2 AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides additional reason information that cannot be provided in a structured field.

*Datatype:* "[Max210Text](#)" on page 497

### 17.1.16.32 AcknowledgedAcceptedStatus21Choice

*Definition:* Specifies whether the status is provided with a reason or not.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag>        | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn> | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 472  |
| Or} | Reason <Rsn>                   | [1..*] | ±       |             | 472  |

#### 17.1.16.32.1 NoSpecifiedReason <NoSpdfdRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that there is no reason available or to report.

*Datatype:* "[NoReasonCode](#)" on page 485

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

#### 17.1.16.32.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason of the acknowledged accepted status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains the following elements (see "[AcknowledgementReason9](#)" on page 471 for details)

| Or | MessageElement<XML Tag>                   | Mult.  | Type | Constr. No. | Page |
|----|---|--------|------|-------------|------|
|    | Code <Cd>                                 | [1..1] | ±    |             | 472  |
|    | AdditionalReasonInformation <AddtlRsnInf> | [0..1] | Text |             | 472  |



## 17.1.17 System Identification

### 17.1.17.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice

*Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

| Or  | MessageElement<XML Tag> | Mult.  | Type    | Constr. No. | Page |
|-----|-------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|------|
| {Or | Code <Cd>               | [1..1] | CodeSet |             | 473  |
| Or} | Proprietary <Prtry>     | [1..1] | Text    |             | 473  |

#### 17.1.17.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 480

#### 17.1.17.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 497

## 17.2 Message Datatypes

### 17.2.1 Amount

#### 17.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

*Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

*Type:* Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

| Name     | Attribute XML Name | Datatype                         |
|----------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Currency | Ccy                | "ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 475 |

**Format**

|                |    |
|----------------|----|
| minInclusive   | 0  |
| totalDigits    | 18 |
| fractionDigits | 5  |

Constraints

• ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

• CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

17.2.1.2 ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount

*Definition:* Number of monetary units specified in a currency where the unit of currency is implied by the context and compliant with ISO 4217. The decimal separator is a dot.

Note: a zero amount is considered a positive amount.

*Type:* Amount

Format

|                |    |
|----------------|----|
| minInclusive   | 0  |
| totalDigits    | 18 |
| fractionDigits | 5  |

17.2.2 CodeSet

17.2.2.1 AcknowledgementReason3Code

*Definition:* Specifies additional information about the processed instruction.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition   |
|----------|-------------------------------|--|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis.  |
| SMPG     | MarketPracticeRuleDiscrepancy | Instruction is accepted but does not comply with the market practice rule published for the concerned market or process. |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.  |

17.2.2.2 AcknowledgementReason5Code

*Definition:* Specifies additional information about the processed instruction.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis. |

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition   |
|----------|-------------------------------|--|
| SMPG     | MarketPracticeRuleDiscrepancy | Instruction is accepted but does not comply with the market practice rule published for the concerned market or process. |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.  |
| CDCY     | ConditionalCurrency           | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process linked to the currency of the transaction.                        |
| CDRG     | ConditionalRegistrar          | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process at the registrar.   |
| CDRE     | ConditionalRealignment        | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process of realignment at the issuer CSD.                                 |
| NSTP     | NotStraightThroughProcessing  | Instruction was not straight through processing and had to be processed manually.  |
| RQWV     | AcceptedWithoutVotingRights   | Instruction registration is accepted but the registration is not in full, that is, not with voting rights.               |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed          | Instruction was received after market deadline.  |

### 17.2.2.3 ActiveCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{3,3}

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 17.2.2.4 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{3,3}

## Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 17.2.2.5 AddressType2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of address.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name        | Definition   |
|----------|-------------|--|
| ADDR     | Postal      | Address is the complete postal address.                    |
| PBOX     | POBox       | Address is a postal office (PO) box.                       |
| HOME     | Residential | Address is the home address.                               |
| BIZZ     | Business    | Address is the business address.                           |
| MLTO     | MailTo      | Address is the address to which mail is sent.              |
| DLVY     | DeliveryTo  | Address is the address to which delivery is to take place. |

### 17.2.2.6 CancellationProcessingStatus3Code

*Definition:* Specifies the status of a cancellation request.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                  | Definition  |
|----------|-----------------------|---|
| CANP     | PendingCancellation   | Cancellation is pending. It is not known at this time whether cancellation can be affected. |
| REJT     | Rejected              | Cancellation has been rejected for further processing.                                      |
| REPR     | InRepair              | Cancellation request is in repair.  |
| PACK     | Accepted              | Cancellation request has been acknowledged for further processing by the account servicer.  |
| DEND     | Denied                | Cancellation will not be executed.  |
| CAND     | CancellationCompleted | Cancellation has been completed.  |

### 17.2.2.7 CancelledStatusReason13Code

*Definition:* Specifies the underlying reason for the cancellation of the associated transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                | Definition                            |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| CANI     | CancelledByYourself | Transaction is cancelled by yourself. |

| CodeName | Name                            | Definition   |
|----------|---------------------------------|--|
| CANS     | CancelledBySystem               | Transaction is cancelled by the system.  |
| CSUB     | CancelledByAgent                | Instruction has been cancelled by the agent due to an event deadline extension.  |
| CXLR     | EndOfLife                       | Transaction is rejected by the executing party, the rejection is final therefore the order is cancelled in the system.   |
| CANT     | CancelledDueToTransformation    | Original transaction has been cancelled and replaced due to a corporate action.  |
| CANZ     | CancelledSplitPartialSettlement | Original transaction has been cancelled and replaced to allow a partial or split settlement.   |
| CORP     | CancelledDueToCorporateAction   | Transaction has been cancelled due to a corporate action.  |
| SCEX     | SecuritiesNoLongerEligible      | Transaction has been cancelled; the security no longer exists or is no longer eligible on the market instructed. For corporate action related cancellation, CORP should be used. |
| OTHR     | Other                           | Other. See Narrative.  |
| CTHP     | CancelledByThirdParty           | Instruction is cancelled by a Third party.   |

#### 17.2.2.8 CancelledStatusReason5Code

*Definition:* Specifies the underlying reason for the cancellation of the associated transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                | Definition                            |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| CANI     | CancelledByYourself | Transaction is cancelled by yourself. |
| OTHR     | Other               | Other. See Narrative.                 |

#### 17.2.2.9 ClearingChannel2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing channel for the routing of the transaction, as part of the payment type identification.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| RTGS     | RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem | Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.  |
| RTNS     | RealTimeNetSettlementSystem   | Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.    |
| MPNS     | MassPaymentNetSystem          | Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system. |
| BOOK     | BookTransfer                  | Payment through internal book transfer.                   |

### 17.2.2.10 CopyDuplicate1Code

*Definition:* Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name          | Definition   |
|----------|---------------|--|
| CODU     | CopyDuplicate | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent. |
| COPY     | Copy          | Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.   |
| DUPL     | Duplicate     | Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.  |

### 17.2.2.11 CountryCode

*Definition:* Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### 17.2.2.12 CreditDebitCode

*Definition:* Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name   | Definition                |
|----------|--------|---------------------------|
| CRDT     | Credit | Operation is an increase. |
| DBIT     | Debit  | Operation is a decrease.  |

### 17.2.2.13 DeniedReason4Code

*Definition:* Specifies the denied reason.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition                                      |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Received after the account servicer's deadline. |

| CodeName | Name                        | Definition  |
|----------|-----------------------------|---|
| DCAN     | DeniedSinceAlreadyCancelled | Cancellation request was denied since the instruction has already been cancelled.       |
| DPRG     | DeniedSinceInProgress       | Cancellation request was denied because the process of settlement is in progress.       |
| DREP     | DeniedSinceRepoEnded        | Cancellation request was denied because the repo was cancelled.                         |
| DSET     | DeniedSinceAlreadySettled   | Cancellation request was denied because the instruction was already settled.            |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed        | Received after market deadline.   |
| OTHR     | Other                       | Other. See Narrative.   |
| CDRG     | ConditionalRegistrar        | Execution is denied due to the execution of a process at the registrar.                 |
| CDCY     | ConditionalCurrency         | Execution is denied due to a process linked to the currency of the transaction.         |
| CDRE     | ConditionalRealignment      | Execution is denied due to the execution of a process of realignment at the issuer CSD. |

#### 17.2.2.14 EventFrequency7Code

*Definition:* Specifies the regularity of an event.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name           | Definition   |
|----------|----------------|--|
| YEAR     | Annual         | Event takes place every year or once a year.               |
| ADHO     | Adhoc          | Event takes place as necessary.                            |
| MNTH     | Monthly        | Event takes place every month or once a month.             |
| DAIL     | Daily          | Event takes place every day.                               |
| INDA     | IntraDay       | Event takes place several times a day.                     |
| WEEK     | Weekly         | Event takes place once a week.                             |
| SEMI     | SemiAnnual     | Event takes place every six months or two times a year.    |
| QUTR     | Quarterly      | Event takes place every three months or four times a year. |
| TOMN     | EveryTwoMonths | Event takes place every two months.                        |
| TOWK     | EveryTwoWeeks  | Event takes place every two weeks.                         |
| TWMN     | TwiceAMonth    | Event takes place two times a month.                       |
| OVNG     | Overnight      | Event takes place overnight.                               |
| ONDE     | OnDemand       | Event takes place on demand.                               |

**17.2.2.15 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| minLength | 1 |
| maxLength | 4 |

**17.2.2.16 ExternalBalanceType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the balance type, as published in an external balance type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| minLength | 1 |
| maxLength | 4 |

**17.2.2.17 ExternalCashAccountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| minLength | 1 |
| maxLength | 4 |

**17.2.2.18 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet



**Format**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| minLength | 1 |
| maxLength | 5 |

**17.2.2.19 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| minLength | 1 |
| maxLength | 4 |

**17.2.2.20 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| minLength | 1 |
| maxLength | 4 |

**17.2.2.21 ExternalSystemErrorHandling1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the error code as generated by the system in the response, as published in an external balance type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| minLength | 1 |
| maxLength | 4 |

**17.2.2.22 FailingReason3Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the reason the transaction/instruction is failing settlement. Settlement on the instructed settlement date is no longer possible.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name  | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| AWMO     | AwaitingMoney                                   | Financial instruments are delivered, but still awaiting money from counterparty.  |
| BYIY     | BuyInProcedure                                  | Buy-in procedure has started on the market (on your behalf if your instruction is a receipt, by the counterparty if your instruction is a delivery).                |
| CLAT     | CounterpartyTooLateForSettlement                | Counterparty's instruction was too late for settlement, that is the matching or settlement problems was solved too late.  |
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed                   | Instruction was received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis.   |
| CANR     | CancellationConfirmationRequested               | Instruction was in suspense. Suspense period is finished so your cancellation or confirmation of instruction is required.   |
| CAIS     | AwaitingSecurities                              | Awaiting financial instruments from a corporate action or other procedure, for example, conversion, dematerialisation, exchange, registration, stamping, splitting. |
| OBJT     | UnderObjection                                  | Financial instruments are, for example, stolen, in dispute, under objection.  |
| AWSH     | AwaitingSecuritiesFromCounterparty              | Financial instruments have not yet been received from the counterparty (if receive against payment trade), the money has been delivered.                            |
| PHSE     | PhysicalDeliveryDelay                           | Settlement is physical. Financial instruments are being delivered.  |
| STCD     | ConfirmationDiscrepancy                         | Discrepancy in the settlement confirmation.   |
| DOCY     | AwaitingDocumentsOrEndorsementsFromYou          | Awaiting documents or endorsements from you.  |
| MLAT     | MoneySecuritiesTooLateForSettlement             | Covering money/financial instruments were received too late for completing settlement on a same day basis.  |
| DOCC     | AwaitingDocumentsOrEndorsementsFromCounterparty | Awaiting documents or endorsements from counterparty.   |
| BLOC     | AccountBlocked                                  | Your account is blocked, no instruction can settle over the account.  |
| CHAS     | EnquirySent                                     | A chaser/enquiry has been sent.   |
| NEWI     | NewIssues                                       | Financial instrument is a new issue and not yet available/tradable.   |
| CLAC     | CounterpartyInsufficientSecurities              | Insufficient deliverable financial instruments in counterparty's account or counterparty does not hold financial instruments.                                       |
| MUNO     | MultipleSettlementAmount                        | Quantity instructed is not a multiple of an existing settlement quantity lot for the financial instrument.  |

| CodeName | Name                                       | Definition  |
|----------|--|---|
| GLOB     | GlobalFormSecurities                       | Settlement cannot be executed; financial instruments are in global form.  |
| PREA     | YourInstructionOnHold                      | Your instruction is a preadvice, that is, for matching only.  |
| PART     | TradeSettlesInPartials                     | Trade will settle in partials.  |
| NOFX     | NoForeignExchangeInstruction               | A foreign exchange instruction from you is missing.   |
| CMON     | CounterpartyInsufficientMoney              | Insufficient money in counterparty's account.   |
| YCOL     | CollateralShortage                         | Insufficient collateral in your account to execute the instruction.   |
| COLL     | SecuritiesPledgedAsCollateral              | Financial instruments are not deliverable as they are pledged as collateral.  |
| DEPO     | RefusedDepositForIssueOfDepositoryReceipts | Deposit of shares for the issuing of depository receipts has been refused. The allotment granted by the issuer is exceeded by your transaction. |
| FLIM     | MaximumForeignLimitReached                 | Insufficient deliverable financial instruments in your account as maximum foreign limit has been reached.                                       |
| INCA     | IncomeAdjustementRequired                  | Financial instruments require income adjustment, for example, dividend or interest.   |
| LINK     | PendingLinkedInstruction                   | Your instruction is pending settlement because the instruction linked to it is pending.   |
| LACK     | LackOfSecurities                           | Insufficient financial instruments in your account.   |
| LALO     | SecuritiesLoanedOut                        | Financial instruments are out on loan.  |
| MONY     | InsufficientMoney                          | Insufficient money in your account.   |
| NCON     | ConfirmationNotReceived                    | Confirmation of settlement has not yet been received.   |
| REFS     | NotInGoodOrder                             | Delivery/receipt was refused because physical financial instruments are not in good order.  |
| SDUT     | LackOfStampDutyInformation                 | Stamp duty information is missing.  |
| BATC     | ProcessingBatchDifference                  | Processing batch differs in the counterparty's instruction, for example, daytime/real-time versus overnight.                                    |
| CYCL     | AwaitingNextSettlementCycle                | Your instruction is confirmed in the local market or is ready for settlement, awaiting next settlement cycle.                                   |
| SBLO     | SecuritiesBlocked                          | Financial instruments are blocked due to, for example, a corporate action event, realignment.   |
| CPEC     | CounterpartyInReceivership                 | Counterparty is in receivership (form of bankruptcy where a court appointed   |

| CodeName | Name                                      | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
|          |   | person - the receiver - manages the affairs of the business).   |
| MINO     | MinimumSettlementAmount                   | Quantity instructed is lower than the minimum existing settlement quantity for the financial instrument.  |
| IAAD     | StatusReasonInvestigation                 | Pending reason being investigated.  |
| OTHR     | Other                                     | Other. See Narrative.   |
| PHCK     | PhysicalSecuritiesVerification            | Physical financial instruments have been received and are being checked for authenticity.   |
| BENO     | BeneficialOwnershipDisagreement           | Disagreement in beneficial ownership.   |
| BOTH     | BothInstructionsOnHold                    | Counterparty's instruction and your instruction are on hold/frozen/ in a preadvice mode.  |
| CLHT     | ClearingHouseTrade                        | Instructed settlement date does not agree with the settlement date on the clearing house trade, that is, a specific type of trade in India.               |
| DENO     | UnavailableDeliverableDenominatedQuantity | Quantity instructed does not match the denomination available/deliverable. Physical securities need to be obtained in deliverable denominated quantities. |
| DISA     | NaturalDisaster                           | Exceptional closing of all financial institutions due to natural disaster, for example, earthquake.   |
| DKNY     | CounterpartyReturnedShares                | Counterparty has returned or refuses the securities.  |
| FROZ     | SecuritiesFrozenAtCSD                     | Financial instruments are blocked at the Central Security Depository (CSD) following a corporate event.   |
| LAAW     | AwaitingOtherTransaction                  | Awaiting settlement of a purchase to cover failing positions.   |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed                      | Instruction was received after market deadline.   |
| LIQU     | InsufficientCentralBankLiquidity          | Central bank liquidity is insufficient.   |
| PRCY     | CounterpartyInstructionOnHold             | Counterparty's instruction is a preadvice, that is, for matching only.  |
| REGT     | CertificatesRejected                      | Certificates have been lodged with the registrar but rejected due to incomplete documentation or foreign ownership limitation reached.                    |
| SETS     | SettlementSystemMethodModified            | Settlement system/method has been modified at central securities depository to allow settlement.  |
| CERT     | WrongCertificatesNumbers                  | Certificate number error.   |
| PRSY     | SystemOnHold                              | Transaction was put on hold/frozen by the system.   |

| CodeName | Name                  | Definition  |
|----------|-----------------------|---|
| INBC     | IncompleteNumberCount | Not all the instructions part of a pool have been received. |

#### 17.2.2.23 LinkageType1Code

*Definition:* Type of linkage requested.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name   | Definition   |
|----------|--------|--|
| LINK     | Link   | Request is to link the referenced transactions.      |
| UNLK     | Unlink | Request is to unlink the referenced transactions.    |
| SOFT     | Soft   | Request is to soft link the referenced transactions. |

#### 17.2.2.24 ModificationProcessingStatus1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the status of a cancellation request.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name      | Definition   |
|----------|-----------|--|
| PACK     | Accepted  | Modification request has been acknowledged for further processing by the account servicer. |
| REJT     | Rejected  | Modification has been rejected for further processing.                                     |
| MODC     | Completed | Modification has been completed.   |
| DEND     | Denied    | Modification will not be executed.   |
| MODP     | Pending   | Modification is pending. It is not known at this time whether modified can be executed.    |
| REPR     | InRepair  | Modification request is in repair.   |

#### 17.2.2.25 MovementResponseType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of movement response to be returned.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name   | Definition  |
|----------|--------|---|
| FULL     | Full   | Response will include full details on the movements reported.                         |
| STTS     | Status | Response will include limited details including the status on the movements reported. |

#### 17.2.2.26 NoReasonCode

*Definition:* Specifies that there is no reason available.

Type: CodeSet

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| NORE     | NoReason | No reason to report or no reason available to report. |

### 17.2.2.27 PartialSettlement2Code

*Definition:* Information about partial settlement.

Type: CodeSet

| CodeName | Name               | Definition   |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| PAIN     | PartialSettlement  | Confirmation is for partial settlement. Part of the transaction remains unsettled. |
| PARC     | PartiallyConfirmed | Confirmation is for partial settlement. No additional settlement will take place.  |

### 17.2.2.28 PendingReason10Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reason the transaction/instruction is pending settlement. Settlement on the instructed settlement date is still possible.

Type: CodeSet

| CodeName | Name  | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| AWMO     | AwaitingMoney                                   | Financial instruments are delivered, but still awaiting money from counterparty.  |
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed                   | Instruction was received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis.   |
| CAIS     | AwaitingSecurities                              | Awaiting financial instruments from a corporate action or other procedure, for example, conversion, dematerialisation, exchange, registration, stamping, splitting. |
| REFU     | InstructionRefusedOrNotRecognised               | Instruction has been refused or not recognised and is represented automatically.  |
| AWSH     | AwaitingSecuritiesFromCounterparty              | Financial instruments have not yet been received from the counterparty (if receive against payment trade), the money has been delivered.                            |
| PHSE     | PhysicalDeliveryDelay                           | Settlement is physical. Financial instruments are being delivered.  |
| TAMM     | TradeAmendedInMarket                            | Trade is being amended in the market.   |
| DOCY     | AwaitingDocumentsOrEndorsementsFromYou          | Awaiting documents or endorsements from you.  |
| DOCC     | AwaitingDocumentsOrEndorsementsFromCounterparty | Awaiting documents or endorsements from counterparty.   |
| BLOC     | AccountBlocked                                  | Your account is blocked, no instruction can settle over the account.  |

| CodeName | Name                                       | Definition  |
|----------|--|---|
| CHAS     | EnquirySent                                | A chaser/enquiry has been sent.   |
| NEWI     | NewIssues                                  | Financial instrument is a new issue and not yet available/tradable.   |
| CLAC     | CounterpartyInsufficientSecurities         | Insufficient deliverable financial instruments in counterparty's account or counterparty does not hold financial instruments.                   |
| MUNO     | MultipleSettlementAmount                   | Quantity instructed is not a multiple of an existing settlement quantity lot for the financial instrument.                                      |
| GLOB     | GlobalFormSecurities                       | Settlement cannot be executed; financial instruments are in global form.  |
| PREA     | YourInstructionOnHold                      | Your instruction is a preadvice, that is, for matching only.  |
| PART     | TradeSettlesInPartials                     | Trade will settle in partials.  |
| NMAS     | NoMatchingRequired                         | Instruction has not been matched; matching process is not required.   |
| NOFX     | NoForeignExchangeInstruction               | A foreign exchange instruction from you is missing.   |
| CMON     | CounterpartyInsufficientMoney              | Insufficient money in counterparty's account.   |
| YCOL     | CollateralShortage                         | Insufficient collateral in your account to execute the instruction.   |
| COLL     | SecuritiesPledgedAsCollateral              | Financial instruments are not deliverable as they are pledged as collateral.  |
| DEPO     | RefusedDepositForIssueOfDepositoryReceipts | Deposit of shares for the issuing of depository receipts has been refused. The allotment granted by the issuer is exceeded by your transaction. |
| FLIM     | MaximumForeignLimitReached                 | Insufficient deliverable financial instruments in your account as maximum foreign limit has been reached.                                       |
| INCA     | IncomeAdjustementRequired                  | Financial instruments require income adjustment, for example, dividend or interest.   |
| LINK     | PendingLinkedInstruction                   | Your instruction is pending settlement because the instruction linked to it is pending.   |
| FUTU     | AwaitingSettlementDate                     | Awaiting settlement date. No settlement problems to be reported.  |
| LACK     | LackOfSecurities                           | Insufficient financial instruments in your account.   |
| LALO     | SecuritiesLoanedOut                        | Financial instruments are out on loan.  |
| MONY     | InsufficientMoney                          | Insufficient money in your account.   |
| NCON     | ConfirmationNotReceived                    | Confirmation of settlement has not yet been received.   |

| CodeName | Name                                      | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| REFS     | NotInGoodOrder                            | Delivery/receipt was refused because physical financial instruments are not in good order.  |
| SDUT     | LackOfStampDutyInformation                | Stamp duty information is missing.  |
| BATC     | ProcessingBatchDifference                 | Processing batch differs in the counterparty's instruction, for example, daytime/real-time versus overnight.  |
| CYCL     | AwaitingNextSettlementCycle               | Your instruction is confirmed in the local market or is ready for settlement, awaiting next settlement cycle.   |
| SBLO     | SecuritiesBlocked                         | Financial instruments are blocked due to, for example, a corporate action event, realignment.   |
| CPEC     | CounterpartyInReceivership                | Counterparty is in receivership (form of bankruptcy where a court appointed person - the receiver - manages the affairs of the business).                 |
| MINO     | MinimumSettlementAmount                   | Quantity instructed is lower than the minimum existing settlement quantity for the financial instrument.  |
| IAAD     | StatusReasonInvestigation                 | Pending reason being investigated.  |
| OTHR     | Other                                     | Other. See Narrative.   |
| PHCK     | PhysicalSecuritiesVerification            | Physical financial instruments have been received and are being checked for authenticity.   |
| BENO     | BeneficialOwnershipDisagreement           | Disagreement in beneficial ownership.   |
| BOTH     | BothInstructionsOnHold                    | Counterparty's instruction and your instruction are on hold/frozen/ in a preadvice mode.  |
| CLHT     | ClearingHouseTrade                        | Instructed settlement date does not agree with the settlement date on the clearing house trade, that is, a specific type of trade in India.               |
| DENO     | UnavailableDeliverableDenominatedQuantity | Quantity instructed does not match the denomination available/deliverable. Physical securities need to be obtained in deliverable denominated quantities. |
| DISA     | NaturalDisaster                           | Exceptional closing of all financial institutions due to natural disaster, for example, earthquake.   |
| DKNY     | CounterpartyReturnedShares                | Counterparty has returned or refuses the securities.  |
| FROZ     | SecuritiesFrozenAtCSD                     | Financial instruments are blocked at the Central Security Depository (CSD) following a corporate event.   |
| LAAW     | AwaitingOtherTransaction                  | Awaiting settlement of a purchase to cover failing positions.   |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed                      | Instruction was received after market deadline.   |



| CodeName | Name                             | Definition   |
|----------|----------------------------------|--|
| LIQU     | InsufficientCentralBankLiquidity | Central bank liquidity is insufficient.  |
| PRCY     | CounterpartyInstructionOnHold    | Counterparty's instruction is a preadvice, that is, for matching only.   |
| REGT     | CertificatesRejected             | Certificates have been lodged with the registrar but rejected due to incomplete documentation or foreign ownership limitation reached. |
| SETS     | SettlementSystemMethodModified   | Settlement system/method has been modified at central securities depository to allow settlement.                                       |
| CERT     | WrongCertificatesNumbers         | Certificate number error.  |
| PRSY     | SystemOnHold                     | Transaction was put on hold/frozen by the system.  |
| INBC     | IncompleteNumberCount            | Not all the instructions part of a pool have been received.  |

### 17.2.2.29 PendingReason6Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why a cancellation request sent for the related instruction is pending.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Instruction was received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis.   |
| CONF     | AwaitingConfirmation          | Awaiting confirmation from the counterparty.  |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.   |
| CDRG     | ConditionalRegistrar          | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process at the registrar.                          |
| CDCY     | ConditionalCurrency           | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process linked to the currency of the transaction. |
| CDRE     | ConditionalRealignment        | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process of realignment at the issuer CSD.          |

### 17.2.2.30 PendingReason9Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why a cancellation request sent for the related instruction is pending.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Instruction was received after the account servicer's deadline. Processed on best effort basis. |
| CONF     | AwaitingConfirmation          | Awaiting confirmation from the counterparty.  |

| CodeName | Name                                    | Definition  |
|----------|---|---|
| OTHR     | Other                                   | Other. See Narrative.   |
| CDRG     | ConditionalRegistrar                    | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process at the registrar.                          |
| CDCY     | ConditionalCurrency                     | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process linked to the currency of the transaction. |
| CDRE     | ConditionalRealignment                  | Execution is conditional to the execution of a process of realignment at the issuer CSD.          |
| CDAC     | ConditionalDeliveryAwaitingCancellation | Awaiting cancellation of one of the party.  |
| INBC     | IncompleteNumberCount                   | Not all the instructions part of a pool have been received.                                       |

### 17.2.2.31 ProcessingPosition3Code

*Definition:* Specifies the processing position.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name        | Definition  |
|----------|-------------|---|
| AFTE     | After       | Specifies that the transaction/instruction is to be executed after the linked transaction/instruction.  |
| WITH     | With        | Specifies that the transaction/instruction is to be executed with the linked transaction/instruction.   |
| BEFO     | Before      | Specifies that the transaction/instruction is to be executed before the linked transaction/instruction. |
| INFO     | Information | Specifies that the transactions/ instructions are linked for information purposes only.                 |

### 17.2.2.32 RejectionReason33Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/cancellation request has a rejected status.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                              | Definition  |
|----------|-----------------------------------|---|
| CASH     | CashAccount                       | Unrecognised or invalid cash account.   |
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed     | Transaction/instruction received after the account servicer's specified deadline. |
| DMON     | SettlementAmountRejection         | Unrecognised or invalid settlement amount.  |
| NCRR     | SettlementAmountCurrencyRejection | Unrecognised or invalid settlement amount currency.                               |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed              | Received after market deadline.   |
| INVL     | InvalidLink                       | Invalid or unrecognized link.   |

| CodeName | Name                       | Definition   |
|----------|----------------------------|--|
| INVB     | InvalidBalance             | Instruction aims at using an invalid balance.  |
| INVN     | InvalidLotNumber           | Invalid or unrecognized lot number.  |
| VALR     | InvalidRule                | Account servicer validation rule rejection.  |
| MONY     | InsufficientMoney          | Insufficient money in your account.  |
| CAEV     | CorporateActionRejection   | Corporate action pending on the financial instrument instructed.   |
| DDAT     | SettlementDateRejection    | Unrecognised or invalid settlement date.   |
| REFE     | ReferenceRejection         | Instruction has a reference identical to another previously received instruction.                          |
| OTHR     | Other                      | Other. See Narrative.  |
| DQUA     | QuantityRejection          | Unrecognised or invalid instructed quantity.   |
| DSEC     | InvalidSecurity            | Unrecognised or invalid financial instrument identification.   |
| MINO     | MinimumSettlementQuantity  | Quantity instructed is lower than the minimum existing settlement quantity for the financial instrument.   |
| MUNO     | MultipleSettlementQuantity | Quantity instructed is not a multiple of an existing settlement quantity lot for the financial instrument. |

### 17.2.2.33 RejectionReason34Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/cancellation request has a rejected status.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Transaction/instruction received after the account servicer's specified deadline. |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed          | Received after market deadline.   |
| CASH     | CashAccount                   | Unrecognised or invalid cash account.   |
| NRGM     | NoMatch                       | More than one instruction match the criteria.                                     |
| NRGN     | NotFoundRejection             | Instruction could not be found.   |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.   |
| REFE     | ReferenceRejection            | Instruction has a reference identical to another previously received instruction. |

### 17.2.2.34 RejectionReason35Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reason why the instruction/cancellation request has a rejected status.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                          | Definition  |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| CASH     | CashAccount                   | Unrecognised or invalid cash account.   |
| ADEA     | AccountServicerDeadlineMissed | Transaction/instruction received after the account servicer's specified deadline. |
| REFE     | ReferenceRejection            | Instruction has a reference identical to another previously received instruction. |
| LATE     | MarketDeadlineMissed          | Received after market deadline.   |
| DDAT     | SettlementDateRejection       | Unrecognised or invalid settlement date.  |
| NRGN     | NotFoundRejection             | Instruction could not be found.   |
| OTHR     | Other                         | Other. See Narrative.   |
| INVM     | InvalidModificationRequest    | Invalid or unrecognized modification request.                                     |
| INVL     | InvalidLink                   | Invalid or unrecognized link.   |

### 17.2.2.35 SecuritiesSettlementStatus1Code

*Definition:* Provides the status of settlement of an instruction.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name    | Definition  |
|----------|---------|---|
| PEND     | Pending | Instruction is pending. Settlement at the instructed settlement date is still possible.     |
| PENF     | Failing | Instruction is failing. Settlement at the instructed settlement date is no longer possible. |

### 17.2.2.36 StatementUpdateType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a statement update, for example, it is a complete statement.

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name     | Definition                       |
|----------|----------|----------------------------------|
| COMP     | Complete | Statement is complete.           |
| DELT     | Delta    | Statement contains changes only. |

### 17.2.2.37 TransactionProcessingStatus3Code

*Definition:* Provides the processing status of a transaction (at account servicer level).

*Type:* CodeSet

| CodeName | Name                 | Definition   |
|----------|----------------------|--|
| CAND     | Cancelled            | Instruction has been cancelled.  |
| PACK     | AcknowledgedAccepted | Instruction has been acknowledged/accepted for further processing by the account servicer. |

| CodeName | Name     | Definition  |
|----------|----------|---|
| REJT     | Rejected | Instruction has been rejected for further processing. |
| REPR     | InRepair | Instruction is accepted but in repair.                |

## 17.2.3 Date

### 17.2.3.1 ISODate

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

*Type:* Date

## 17.2.4 DateTime

### 17.2.4.1 ISODateTime

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* DateTime

## 17.2.5 IdentifierSet

### 17.2.5.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

#### Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

#### Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### 17.2.5.2 BICFIDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; BICIdentifier

#### Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

#### Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### 17.2.5.3 IBAN2007Identifier

*Definition:* The International Bank Account Number is a code used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution as described in the 2007 edition of the ISO 13616 standard "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" and replaced by the more recent edition of the standard.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

#### Constraints

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### 17.2.5.4 LEIIdentifier

*Definition:* Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: Global LEI System; LEIIdentifier

| Format  |                           |
|---------|---------------------------|
| pattern | [A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2} |

## 17.2.6 Indicator

### 17.2.6.1 YesNoIndicator

Definition: Indicates a "Yes" or "No" type of answer for an element.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: Yes

Meaning When False: No

## 17.2.7 Quantity

### 17.2.7.1 DecimalNumber

Definition: Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

Type: Quantity

| Format         |    |
|----------------|----|
| totalDigits    | 18 |
| fractionDigits | 17 |

## 17.2.8 Text

### 17.2.8.1 Exact3NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 3 digits.

Type: Text

| Format  |          |
|---------|----------|
| pattern | [0-9]{3} |

### 17.2.8.2 Exact4AlphaNumericText

Definition: Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

| Format  |                |
|---------|----------------|
| pattern | [a-zA-Z0-9]{4} |

### 17.2.8.3 Exact4NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 4 digits.

Type: Text

Format

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| pattern | [0-9]{4} |
|---------|----------|

17.2.8.4 Exact5NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 5 digits.

Type: Text

Format

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| pattern | [0-9]{5} |
|---------|----------|

17.2.8.5 ISO20022MessageIdentificationText

Definition: ISO 20022 Message identifier of an MX message.

Type: Text

Format

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| pattern | [a-z]{4}\.[0-9]{3}\.[0-9]{3}\.[0-9]{2} |
|---------|--|

17.2.8.6 Max140Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

Type: Text

Format

|           |     |
|-----------|-----|
| minLength | 1   |
| maxLength | 140 |

17.2.8.7 Max16Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Type: Text

Format

|           |    |
|-----------|----|
| minLength | 1  |
| maxLength | 16 |

17.2.8.8 Max2048Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

Type: Text

Format

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| minLength | 1 |
|-----------|---|



maxLength

2048

17.2.8.9 Max210Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 210 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength

1

maxLength

210

17.2.8.10 Max34Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength

1

maxLength

34

17.2.8.11 Max350Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength

1

maxLength

350

17.2.8.12 Max35Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength

1

maxLength

35

17.2.8.13 Max5NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 5 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern

[0-9]{1,5}

**17.2.8.14 Max70Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

|           |    |
|-----------|----|
| minLength | 1  |
| maxLength | 70 |